



GUIDE

طبعة  
جديدة  
طبقاً لأحدث تعديلات  
كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٦

# CONNECT *Plus*

By a group of supervisors

الفصل الدراسي الأول

الصف السادس الابتدائي

للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لغات



تطبيق  
المعاصر التفاعلي



**6<sup>th</sup>**  
Primary  
2026

FIRST TERM





GUIDE

# CONNECT *Plus*

By a group of supervisors

الصف السادس الابتدائي الفصل الدراسي الأول



**AL TALABA BOOKSTONE**

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

[www.gpseducation.com](http://www.gpseducation.com)

15014



**6<sup>th</sup>**  
Primary  
2026

FIRST TERM

All rights reserved



بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

﴿إِنَّ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا﴾ ﷻ صَدَقَ اللَّهُ الْعَظِيمُ

Egyptian National Library - Cataloging During Publishing

prepared by Technical Affairs Department

El-Moasser Guide based on Connect Plus for Primary Schools

By a group of supervisors.

Cairo: GPS for Printing, Publishing and Distribution, 2025 - 2026

2 vols. ; 28 cm.

For 6<sup>th</sup> primary- First term

I.S.B.N. : 978 - 977 - 970 - 150 - 9

1. English language - study and teaching (primary).

2. Education, primary

372.6521

رقم الإيداع : ١٠٨٧٩ / ٢٠٢٥

Name : .....

School : .....

Grade : .....

Class : .....

Teacher's name : .....



## تطبيق GPS التفاعلي

التطبيق التفاعلي من سلسلة كتب ...

### الامتحان المعاصر

QR Code



كيفية الاستخدام: 1. نزل التطبيق. 2. أنشئ حسابك. 3. أدخل الكود الموجود على ظهر الغلاف.



استمتع  
بجميع مزايا  
التطبيق  
لجميع المواد الدراسية

## تصنيف بلوم للمستويات المعرفية



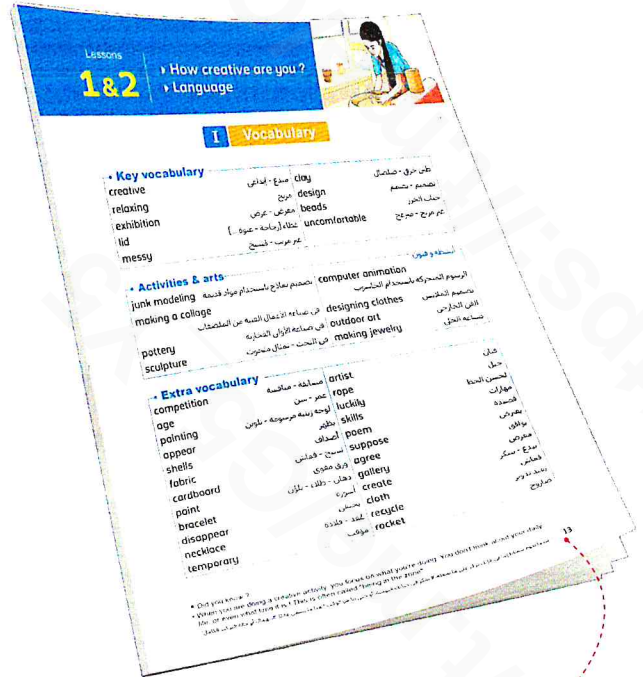
ملاحظة: تم تصنيف الأسئلة بداخل كل تمرين طبقاً لمستويات هرم بلوم والإشارة لها كالتالي:

● تذكر ● فهم ● تطبيق ● حل مشكلات (تحليل أو تقويم أو ابتكار)



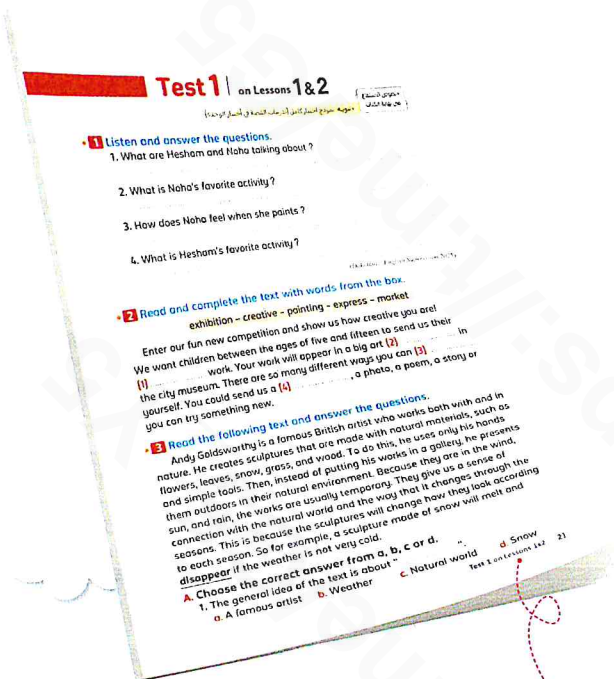
# GUIDEBOOK

## دليل الكتاب



### 1 Lessons

عرض شامل مبسط للدروس



### 2 Tests on lessons

اختبارات على الدروس



## Determine the meaning of words and phrases

1. Read and answer the questions.  
2. Match the words with their meanings.

Read and answer the questions.  
1. Read the text and answer the questions.  
2. Match the words with their meanings.

1. Read and learn how to answer.  
2. Match the words with their meanings.

### 3 Skills

جزء يساعد علي كيفية التعامل مع مهارة القراءة و الكتابة

### 3 Important Topics

تتميز مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وفكر من أجل أن تظهر هذه المهارة بشكل جيد على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٣٧ جملة).

#### 1 A creative project competition

There are so many different ways to express myself. I can enter a competition using any kind of creative work. I use the things I find around me. For example, I use leaves to make some outdoor art. When it's windy, the leaves and flowers in my art move. The back of the school playground is better to make the art. When it rains, outdoor art looks terrible. I decided to put big cloth over it until the rain stops.

#### 2 A school show

Yesterday, it was the school show. It was great. I was in a play because I like acting. Tamer was the photographer for the school show. When each person was on stage, Tamer took photos. The play was about a family at home in the living room. We needed some furniture like a sofa, a lamp, or some pictures for the wall. My teacher Mr Ali is very good at making things. He shows me what I do.

#### 3 A famous sculptor

From: omar@gmail.com  
To: ali@gmail.com  
Subject: a famous sculptor  
Dear Ali,  
How are things? I'd like to tell you about a famous sculptor. Anish Kapoor is a great artist. He was born in India. He studied art in the UK. He likes to use new shapes as well as different materials. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. He can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time. He uses stainless steel because it stays shiny and bad weather doesn't damage it. Yours, Omar

### 4 Important Topics

جزء يحتوي على الموضوعات الهامة

### Test 5 on Unit 1

#### 1 Listen and answer the questions.

- When was the school show?
- How many students were in the choir?
- How was the play at the school show?
- What did they do at the last part of the show?

#### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

website - cinema - photos - exhibition - taking photographs.  
Salem is a creative photographer. He is good at taking photographs. On the weekend, his mom and dad took him to a photography exhibition. After the exhibition, they went into the city and Salem took photos of his friends and the things he saw. He shared his photos on the school website.

#### 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954. He moved to London to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places. Tall tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. Kapoor is a good artist and he understands math as well as materials. This means that he can make sculptures that can stay in place for a long time. For example, in Tall Tree, the sculpture is made of stainless steel because it is a very strong material. It also stays shiny and bad weather doesn't damage it. Cloud Gate is another famous sculpture made by Kapoor. You can see it in Chicago, USA. Cloud Gate is very high. People can even walk under it.

- A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
- Kapoor studied art in   
 a. Spain   
 b. India   
 c. London   
 d. USA
  - The text is generally about   
 a. Studying in London   
 b. Living in USA   
 c. Kapoor's sculptures   
 d. Kapoor's life

### 5 Tests on units

اختبارات علي الواحدات تشمل علي اختبار من كتاب المعاصر و اختبار مجمع من مختلف المحافظات

### Fiction Reader A Wonderful Surprise



### 6 Story

عرض شيق للقصة المقررة





Homework Notebook



## كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

للوالب المنزلى  
واللقلللال فى نلال الكلال

### عزلى المعلم / ولى الأمر / اللال :

« نهللى إلل كلال الللال للوالب المنزلى »

أعدت كلال الللال للوالب المنزلى الللل بألأل الأسالل اللللل  
و اللل الللل الللل.

**الهل :** الللل على ملللة اللال لللل، اسلعل و شللل.

**كلفلة الللل :** لللل مع كلال الشلل كالل :

١. لللل : لللل لللل على الللل.

٢. أسلعل : لللل أسلعل للل لللل.

٣. شللل : لللل شللل للل لللل.



# Be Ready

**لو عايز** تتعلم نطق الكلمات صح يبقى قاموس المعاصر الناطق.



من خلال Qr code

## 35

**Reading  
comprehension**

## 55

**Writing texts  
samples**



قد يواجه بعض الطلاب صعوبات في الأسئلة الآتية

**Reading  
comprehension**

صعوبة التعامل مع  
سؤال قطعة الفهم

**Writing texts  
samples**

صعوبة التعامل مع  
سؤال مهارة الكتابة



مفتاح الحل

جزء خاص بسؤال

**Reading comprehension**

يمكن الطالب من التعامل مع  
هذا السؤال في كل نص قراءة  
واستماع وفي نهاية كل وحدة

جزء خاص بسؤال

**Writing texts samples**

يمكن الطالب من التعامل مع هذا  
السؤال في نهاية كل وحدة  
ونهاية الكتاب



# Specifications for Sixth Year Primary (1<sup>st</sup> Term )

## English Examination (2025 - 2026)

مواصفات ورقة امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف السادس الابتدائي للمدارس الرسمية و الخاصة لغات للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٥ / ٢٠٢٦

Time : Two Hours    2025 / 2026    30 Marks

### A Listening [6 Marks]

#### 1 Listen and answer the questions :

[6 Marks]

An unseen listening text of about **SEVENTY [70]** words at the appropriate difficulty level for **primary SIX** followed by **FOUR [4]** open-ended questions are provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer the questions.

[One mark and a half each]

### B Reading [14 Marks]

#### 2 Read and complete the text/dialogue with words from the box:

[4 Marks]

An unseen text from **EIGHTY [80]** to **NINETY [90]** words **OR** a dialogue of **FOUR [4]** exchanges with **FOUR [4]** deletions is provided. A list of **FIVE [5]** separate words related to vocabulary is also given. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text or the dialogue with **ONE** of the **FIVE [5]** words given. The first sentence should be written in full.

[One mark each]

#### 3 Read the following text and answer the questions:

[5 Marks]

An unseen literary or informational text from **ONE HUNDRED [100]** to **ONE HUNDRED TWENTY [120]** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for **primary SIX**. Learners are asked to answer :

**A. TWO [2] MCQs** with **FOUR [4]** options each dealing with the following reading comprehension skills :

[Half a mark each]

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text.

**B. TWO [2] open-ended** questions dealing with **TWO** of the following reading comprehension skills :

[Two marks each]

- Describe the relationship between a series of historical events, scientific ideas or concepts, or steps in technical procedures in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Compare and contrast the most important points and key details presented in a text.

- Determine the central message, lesson, or moral and explain how it is conveyed through key details in the text.

### The Reader [5 Marks]

#### 4 A. Read and write YES or NO :

[1 Mark]

**TWO [2]** sentences related to the Reader are provided. Learners are asked to read the sentences and write **[YES]** or **[NO]** in front of each sentence. The sentences should test learners' knowledge of vocabulary, events, characters and setting of the Reader.

[Half a mark each]

#### B. Read and answer the questions :

[4 Marks]

**TWO [2]** open-ended questions are provided. Learners are asked to answer the questions given. The questions should test learners' knowledge of events, characters in the Reader.

[Two marks each]

### C Writing [10 Marks]

#### 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

[2 Marks]

**FOUR [4]** MCQs based on **structure** are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer out of the **FOUR [4]** options given.

[Half a mark each]

#### 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences :

[1 Mark]

Learners are given **TWO [2]** sentences of not less than **SIX [6]** words each [affirmative, negative & interrogative]. The words of each sentence are scrambled. Learners are asked to put the words in order to make a correct sentence.

[Half a mark each]

#### 7 Write a text of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements :

[7 Marks]

Learners are asked to write [a paragraph/email/personal profile/ a report/a short story] of about **SEVENTY [70]** words using the given guiding elements that can be words, questions, fact file [including questions only] etc.

[Two marks for relevance of ideas - Two marks for vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar]



## ► **THEME ONE** I discover myself

Unit 1	Express yourself ! .....	13
Unit 2	Home is where the heart is .....	50
Review 1	.....	88

## ► **THEME TWO** Myself and others

Unit 3	School time! .....	93
Unit 4	We can make a difference ! .....	132
Review 2	.....	167

### ► **Non-Fiction Reader:**

Hassan Fathy : A biography .....	175
----------------------------------	-----

### ► **Fiction Reader:**

A wonderful surprise .....	179
----------------------------	-----

► <b>Listening Texts</b> .....	212
--------------------------------	-----

► <b>Answers of Topics</b> .....	216
----------------------------------	-----

► <b>Translation of Listening &amp; Reading Texts</b> .....	221
---	-----

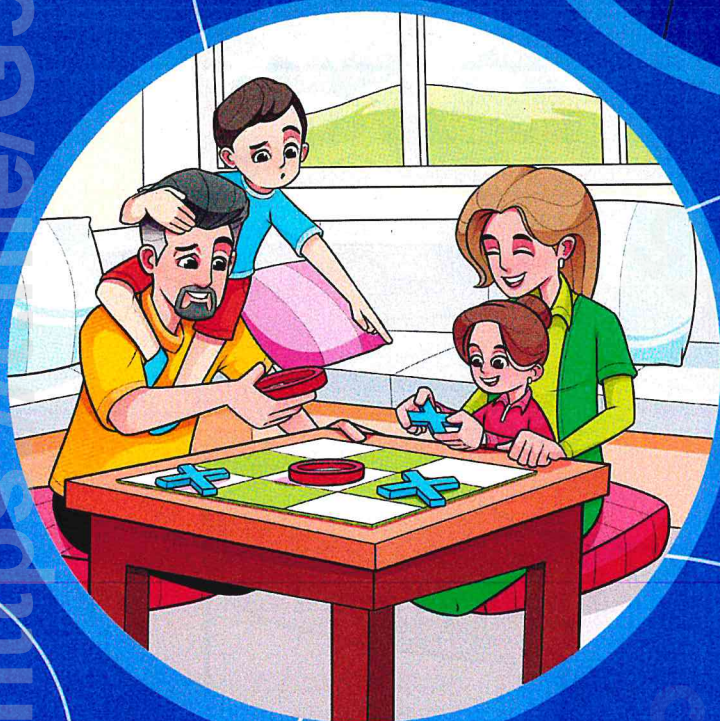
علامة **SB** تشير إلى أسئلة كتاب المدرسة





## THEME

# 1 I discover myself





# UNIT

# 1

## Express yourself !

عبر عن نفسك !

### Aims of Unit One :

In this unit I will ...

- talk about different creative activities.
- understand and use the zero conditional.
- listen to and understand an interview.
- understand and use prepositional phrases.
- read and understand a poem.
- read and understand an article.
- write a report using time clauses and sequencing.
- read and understand a story.

### الأهداف العامة للوحدة الأولى :

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- أتحدث عن أنشطة إبداعية مختلفة.
- أفهم وأستخدم الحالة الصفرية.
- أستمع وأفهم مقابلة شخصية.
- أفهم وأستخدم ثبته الجملة.
- أقرأ وأفهم قصيدة.
- أقرأ وأفهم مقال.
- أكتب تقرير مستخدماً الروابط الزمنية وتسلسل الأحداث.
- أقرأ وأفهم قصة.





# ► How creative are you ?

## ► Language



## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

creative	مبدع - إبداعي	clay	طين خزفي - صلصال
relaxing	مريح	design	تصميم - يصمم
exhibition	معرض - عرض	beads	حبات الخرز
lid	غطاء [زجاجة - عبوة ...]	uncomfortable	غير مريح - مزعج
messy	غير مرتب - مُتسخ		

## • Activities &amp; arts

junk modeling	تصميم نماذج باستخدام مواد قديمة	computer animation	أنشطة و فنون
making a collage	فن صناعة الأعمال الفنية من الملصقات	designing clothes	الرسم المتحركة باستخدام الحاسوب
pottery	فن صناعة الأواني الفخارية	outdoor art	تصميم الملابس
sculpture	فن النحت - تمثال منحوت	making jewelry	الفن الخارجي

## • Extra vocabulary

competition	مسابقة - منافسة	artist	فنان
age	عمر - سن	rope	حبل
painting	لوحة زيتية مرسومة - تلوين	luckily	لحسن الحظ
appear	يظهر	skills	مهارات
shells	أصداف	poem	قصيدة
fabric	نسيج - قماش	suppose	يفترض
cardboard	ورق مقوى	agree	يوافق
paint	دهان - طلاء - يلون	gallery	معرض
bracelet	أسورة	create	يبدع - يبتكر
disappear	يختفي	cloth	قمماش
necklace	عقد - قلادة	recycle	يعيد تدوير
temporary	مؤقت	rocket	صاروخ

• Did you know ?

• When you are doing a creative activity, you focus on what you're doing. You don't think about your daily life, or even what time it is ! This is often called "being in the zone".

• عندما تقوم بنشاط إبداعي، فإنك تركز على ما تفعله، لا تفكر في حياتك اليومية، أو حتى ما هو الوقت ! هذا ما يسمى غالباً "الانغماس أو حالة التركيز الكامل".

## • Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
show يُبَيِّن - يعرض	showed	shown
send يرسل	sent	sent
build يبني - يشيد	built	built
hear يسمع	heard	heard
feel يشعر	felt	felt
leave يغادر	left	left

## • Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
messy	not clean or tidy
disappear	to go away; you can't see it any more
uncomfortable	not feeling nice on your skin
relaxing	making you happy and not worried

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

focus on يركز على	set an alarm يضبط المنبه
enter a competition يشترك في مسابقة	go for a walk يذهب للمشي
to get you excited تجعلك متحمس	do a creative project يقوم بمشروع إبداعي
recycled cloth قماش معاد تدويره	go away يختفى - يزول
save money يدخر المال	instead of بدلاً من
a bit of قليلاً من	good at جيد في
make an animation يصنع فيلم رسوم متحركة	



### Pop Quiz

### on Vocabulary

### تدريب تلقائي

\* يهدف لاتقان المفردات اللغوية



### ► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My favorite ..... is making pottery.

(التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / البحيرة - دمنهور)

- a. food                      b. activity                      c. subject                      d. sport

2. He is the ..... who creates beautiful outdoor art.

(التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / القاهرة - حدائق القبة)

- a. vet                      b. artist                      c. doctor                      d. farmer

3. If you design clothes, you can save money by using recycled .....

- a. paper                      b. copper                      c. clay                      d. cloth

(التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / المنوفية - شبين الكوم)



4. Fareeda is going to make a/an ..... of a cat with clay.  
a. jewelry                      b. animation                      c. sculpture                      d. clock
5. To ..... means to go away.  
a. watch                      b. appear                      c. disappear                      d. enter
6. When something is ..... , it's not clean or tidy.  
a. calm                      b. messy                      c. clear                      d. quiet
7. This competition is for children between the ..... of five and fifteen years.  
a. ropes                      b. heights                      c. ages                      d. weights
8. To make jewelry, you can use different colored ..... .  
a. pens                      b. rulers                      c. beads                      d. erasers
9. I want to win the creative project ..... .  
a. hotel                      b. competition                      c. kitchen                      d. restaurant
10. You could use plastic bottles or ..... in junk modeling.  
a. cardboard                      b. clouds                      c. sunlight                      d. food

## II Listening and Reading

### 1. Main points on listening and reading texts      نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Show your creativity	exhibition	Creative works in the competition will appear in an art exhibition.
	express	There are many different ways to express yourself.
	junk modeling	You could use plastic bottles or cardboard in junk modeling.
	recycled cloth	Use recycled cloth in making clothes to save money and help the planet.
	collage	You can make a beautiful collage with a bit of everything.
	beads	Use colored beads to make beautiful jewelry.
	sculpture	We can use clay or stone to make sculptures.
	animation	You could use a computer or a phone to make an animation.
creative activities	competition	There is a competition for creative projects.
	favorite	Noha's favorite activity is painting.
	relaxing	Hesham likes pottery. He thinks it's relaxing.

## Lesson 1

## Show your creativity !

## Pop Quiz

- ترجمة النصوص في نهاية الكتاب.
- تدرب على 4 من قطع القلم ونصوص الاستماع

Enter our fun new **competition**<sup>[1]</sup> and show us how creative you are! We want children between the ages of five and fifteen to send us their creative work. Your work will appear in a big art **exhibition**<sup>[2]</sup> in the city museum. There are so many different ways you can **express yourself**<sup>[3]</sup>. You could send us a painting, a photo, a poem, or a story. Or why not try something new ? Here are some ideas for different creative activities to get you excited!

**Junk modeling**

What can you make with a cardboard box ? Plastic bottles and lids ? Try junk modeling! Use your creative and design skills to build a rocket, a ship, a car, or a house.

**Pottery**<sup>[4]</sup>

Do you like getting your hands messy ? Then try pottery! Use clay to make a bowl, a cup, or a vase.

**Designing clothes**

If you can't find anything you want to wear, how about designing and making your own clothes ? You can use **recycled cloth**<sup>[5]</sup> to save money and help the planet.

**Making a collage**

If you can't decide what to use in your project, use a bit of everything! You could make a beautiful collage with material, paint, and colored paper.

**Making jewelry**<sup>[6]</sup>

Use beads to make beautiful jewelry, for example, necklaces or bracelets.

**Sculpture**

You could use wood, **clay**<sup>[7]</sup>, or stone to make a sculpture of an animal, a person, or a completely new shape.

**Outdoor art**

Use the things you find around you in the outside world, for example, leaves or shells to make some outdoor art.

**Computer animation**

If you prefer using technology, you could use your computer **skills**<sup>[8]</sup> to make an animation. Moving pictures can tell a great story!

There are so many things you can do! How do you like to express yourself ?

[1] مسابقة

[2] معرض

[3] تعبير عن نفسك

[4] فن صناعة الأواني الفخارية

[5] قماش معاد تدويره

[6] مجوهرات

[7] صلصال

[8] مهارات

**Demonstrate understanding of specific details.**

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل المحددة في النص.

**Learn**

1. The creative work will appear in a big art .....  
a. ship      b. market      c. show      d. **exhibition**

**Practice**

2. If you like ....., use clay to make a vase.  
a. jewelry      b. collage      c. pottery      d. music



## Lesson 2

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

**Noha** : Have you heard about this competition, Hesham ? It's for any kind of **creative**<sup>[1]</sup> project. I'd like to enter.

**Hesham** : Oh wow, that looks good. What are you going to make ?



**Noha** : I don't know. My favorite **activity**<sup>[2]</sup> is painting. I always feel happy when I'm painting. If I'm sad, I paint. Then I feel better.

**Hesham** : Hmm. If I paint, I don't feel happy. I'm not very good at it!

**Noha** : Yes, you are! Anyway, no one is bad at a creative project. You can do or make anything you like. There's no right or wrong!

**Hesham** : I prefer making things with my hands. I like **sculpture**<sup>[3]</sup> or junk modeling, but my favorite is pottery. I think it's really relaxing!

**Noha** : Oh, I don't agree. I don't like pottery because I don't like getting my hands **messy**<sup>[4]</sup>. I think it's really uncomfortable to have clay on my hands.

[1] مبدع

[2] نشاط

[3] فن النحت

[4] متسخ

**Hesham** : But if you paint, you get paint on your hands.

**Noha** : Well, yes, I suppose you're right. Luckily, the paint disappears quickly when I wash them!

### Andy Goldsworthy

Andy Goldsworthy is a famous British **artist**<sup>[1]</sup> who works both with and in nature. He creates sculptures that are made with natural **materials**<sup>[2]</sup>, such as flowers, leaves, snow, grass, and wood. To do this, he uses only his hands and simple tools. Then, instead of putting his works in a **gallery**<sup>[3]</sup>, he presents them outdoors in their natural environment. Because they are in the wind, sun, and rain, the works are usually temporary. They give us a sense of **connection**<sup>[4]</sup> with the natural world and the way that it changes through the seasons. This is because the sculptures will change how they look according to each season. So for example, a sculpture made of snow will melt and disappear if the weather is not very cold.

[1] فنان

[2] مواد خام

[3] معرض

[4] تواصل





## Pop Quiz

## on Reading

► Read and complete the text with words from the box.

art – wind – messy – competition – leaves

There are so many different ways to express myself. I can enter a/an [1] ..... using any kind of creative work. I'm making some outdoor [2] ..... for my creative project competition. I use the things I find around me. For example, I use leaves to make some outdoor art. When it's windy, the [3] ..... and flowers in my art move. The back of the school playground is better to make the art. When it rains, outdoor art looks terrible ! I decide to put a big cloth over it until the [4] ..... stops.

(Cairo – Helwan 2025)

## III Language

### Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

► Usage : الاستخدام

A. We use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are true for us. نستخدم الحالة الصفرية للتحدث عن حقائق وأشياء حقيقية بالنسبة لنا.

► Formation : التكوين

We form it using if or when, and the present simple or a modal like can : يتم صياغة الحالة الصفرية باستخدام when/if وزمن المضارع البسيط أو فعل ناقص مثل can :

Statement  
الجملة الخبرية

→ If / When + present simple, ... present simple / can + inf.

ex. - If / When you paint, you get paint on your hands.

- If I go to bed late, I can't wake up in the morning.

B. We also use the zero conditional to give instructions or make suggestions. To do this, we form it using if / when, and the imperative.

يمكننا أيضًا استخدام الحالة الصفرية لإعطاء التعليمات أو تقديم اقتراحات. وللقيام بذلك، نستخدم if/when وصيغة الأمر.



If / When + مضارع بسيط + , imperative .  
صيغة الامر

ex. - If it **starts** to rain, **use** an umbrella.

- When you **arrive** at school, **come** to the classroom.

Wh- Q.

السؤال بـ [أداة  
استفهام]

Q.W. + do / does + subj. + inf. + if / when + مضارع بسيط...?

ex. - What do you do if/ when you feel sad?

= If/When you feel sad, what do you do?



## Pop Quiz

## on Language

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. When she ..... carefully to the teacher, she understands.

- a. listens                      b. listening                      c. listened                      d. listen

(Ismailia – El Tal El Kebir 2025)

2. If I put food in the fridge, it ..... cold.

- a. is                                  b. was                                  c. be                                  d. are

(Alexandria – Gomrok 2025)

3. If you mix yellow and red, you ..... orange.

- a. made                                  b. makes                                  c. making                                  d. make

4. **SB** If you want to get up early, you can ..... an alarm.

- a. to set                                  b. setting                                  c. set                                  d. sets

(Minia - Maghagha 2025)

5. I feel excited when I ..... the science museum.

- a. visited                                  b. visiting                                  c. visit                                  d. visits

6. **AB** When my dad ..... the plants, they die.

- a. isn't watering                      b. don't water                      c. doesn't water                      d. won't water

7. The pot breaks ..... you drop it on the floor.

- a. but                                  b. if                                  c. so                                  d. while

8. **SB** When you go to the beach, ..... a sunhat.

- a. taking                                  b. take                                  c. takes                                  d. took



9. What ..... you do if you have stomach ache ?  
a. did                      b. are                      c. do                      d. were
10. If you ..... hard, you can get good grades.  
a. studies                      b. study                      c. studying                      d. studied
11. My father ..... angry when I arrive home late.  
a. get                      b. got                      c. gets                      d. getting
12. I always take my umbrella when it .....  
a. rain                      b. rains                      c. raining                      d. rained
13. How do you feel when you ..... to school ?  
a. going                      b. to go                      c. goes                      d. go
14. If I ..... a toothache, I can go to the dentist.  
a. have                      b. has                      c. having                      d. had
15. You can't ..... early if you take the bus.  
a. arrives                      b. arrived                      c. arriving                      d. arrive
16. If you heat butter, it .....  
a. melting                      b. melt                      c. melts                      d. melted

## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.



1. If I ..... [did] something creative, I feel happy.  
(التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / البحيرة / دمنهور)
2. If I ..... [be] tired, I go to bed early.  
(التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / الجيزة / كرداسة)
3. Plants die if you ..... [not] water them.
4. If your sister is sad, ..... [talking] to her.
5. What do they ..... [doing] when it is windy ?
6. When you ..... [heats] water, it boils.
7. When he walks in the park, he ..... [could] feel relaxed.
8. If she ..... [be] worried, she asks her parents for help.
9. .... [Where] it rains, we can't play outside.
10. When I don't tell the truth, my parents ..... [punished] me.



# Test 1 | on Lessons 1&2

• نصوص الاستماع  
فى نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة فى اختبار الوحدة]

## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What are Hesham and Noha talking about ?

.....

2. What is Noha's favorite activity ?

.....

3. How does Noha feel when she paints ?

.....

4. What is Hesham's favorite activity ?

.....

(Dakahlia – English Supervision 2025)

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

exhibition – creative – painting – express – market

Enter our fun new competition and show us how creative you are!

We want children between the ages of five and fifteen to send us their

[1] ..... work. Your work will appear in a big art [2] ..... in the city museum. There are so many different ways you can [3] ..... yourself. You could send us a [4] ....., a photo, a poem, a story or you can try something new.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Andy Goldsworthy is a famous British artist who works both with and in nature. He creates sculptures that are made with natural materials, such as flowers, leaves, snow, grass, and wood. To do this, he uses only his hands and simple tools. Then, instead of putting his works in a gallery, he presents them outdoors in their natural environment. Because they are in the wind, sun, and rain, the works are usually temporary. They give us a sense of connection with the natural world and the way that it changes through the seasons. This is because the sculptures will change how they look according to each season. So for example, a sculpture made of snow will melt and disappear if the weather is not very cold.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about ".....".

a. A famous artist    b. Weather    c. Natural world    d. Snow



2. The opposite of the underlined word "disappear" is .....
- a. peal                      b. put                      c. appear                      d. use

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What materials does Andy use for sculptures ?
- .....

4. What happens to a snow sculpture if the weather is hot ?
- .....

(Cairo – Al-Khalifa and Mokatam 2024)

• **4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. When the sun ....., the plants make their food.

a. rise                      b. rising                      c. rise                      d. rises

(Alexandria – Montazah 2025)

2. If we freeze water, it ..... into ice.

a. turned                      b. turn                      c. turns                      d. turning

3. My teacher gets angry when I ..... do my homework.

a. didn't                      b. don't                      c. doesn't                      d. isn't

4. What do we get when we ..... red and blue ?

a. mixes                      b. mix                      c. mixed                      d. mixing

• **5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. a collage – to make – use – you – can – What ?

(التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / القاهرة / المقطم)

2. favorite – junk – My – modeling – is – activity.
- .....

• **6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"A competition"**

**Guiding elements:**

- enter                      • junk modeling                      • recycled                      • art exhibition
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....





## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

shout	يصيح - يصرخ	flash	وميض - ومضة	reflect	يعكس
cheer	يهتف - يشجع	jewels	جواهر	pattern	نمط - شكل
breath	نفس	sculptor	نحات	sight	منظر - مشهد
brilliantly	ببألقي	spheres	أجسام كروية	concert	حفلة موسيقى
bang = blast	فرقعة - انفجار	bubbles	فقاعات	explode	ينفجر
verse	بيت [من الشعر]	bright = shiny	لامع	materials	مواد خام
irregular	غير منتظم	fireworks	ألعاب نارية	poet	شاعر

## • Extra vocabulary

noisily	بضجيج / بصخب / بضوضاء	float	يطفو	metal	معدن
tower	برج	huge	ضخم	stick	عصا
softly	بلطف / برفق	mirror	مرآة	damage	يدمر - يتلف
sailing ship	سفينة إبحار شراعية	image	صورة	theater	مسرح
burn	يحترق / يشتعل	location	موقع	celebrate	يحتفل
stainless steel	مادة الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ	height	ارتفاع	pipe	ماسورة - أنبوب
public	عام	cooking pots	أواني الطهي	rhyme	قافية - يُقَفَّى

## • Famous places and sculptures

Tall Tree and the Eye	مجسم الشجرة طويلة القامة والعين	Finland	دولة فنلندا
Cloud Gate	بوابة السحاب [تمثال]	Helsinki	هلسنكي [عاصمة فنلندا]
Guggenheim Museum	متحف غوغنهايم [في أسبانيا]		
	Balloon Dog sculpture		
	تمثال كلب البالون		
	the Sibelius Monument		
	نصب سيبيلاوس		

## • Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
stand يقف	stood	stood
shine تشرق - تشرق	shone	shone
understand يفهم	understood	understood

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
verse	is a part of the poem
rhyme	is when two words sound the same at the end of the word
bubble	a liquid ball full of air
sphere	the shape of a ball
irregular	not following a pattern
reflect	when a mirror shows an image
material	what something is made from , for example , gold , clay , wood
sculptor	a person who makes sculptures

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

as bright as day	مشرقة مثل النهار	act on stage	يمثل على خشبة المسرح
shoot up into the air	ينطلق في الهواء	look out far	ينظر بعيدًا
take off	يقلع / ينطلق [مثل الصاروخ]	give it away	يتخلص منه
hold our breath	نحبس / نكتم أنفاسنا	far away	بعيد
up high	عاليًا / لأعلى	over the years	على مر السنين



**Pop Quiz**

**on Vocabulary**

**تدريب تلقائي**

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية



► **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

- When the mirror shows your image, it ..... it.  
a. cuts                      b. does                      c. makes                      d. reflects  
(التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / القاهرة / الشروق)
- A ..... is a person who makes sculptures.  
a. farmer                      b. teacher                      c. sculptor                      d. driver  
(التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / المنوفية / شبين الكوم)
- How long can you ..... your breath underwater ?  
a. catch                      b. hold                      c. walk                      d. go
- A/An ..... is a liquid ball full of air.  
a. square                      b. image                      c. bubble                      d. triangle
- These knives and cooking pots are made of stainless .....  
a. steel                      b. wool                      c. wood                      d. leather
- A ..... is a part of the poem.  
a. sight                      b. poet                      c. verse                      d. shape



7. When something is ..... , it's not following a pattern.  
a. regular                      b. fixed                      c. irregular                      d. straight
8. Any perfect round object like a ball is a .....  
a. square                      b. rectangle                      c. sphere                      d. triangle
9. A ..... is when two words sound the same at the end of the word.  
a. rhyme                      b. story                      c. subject                      d. book
10. The lights of the fireworks make the sky as ..... as day.  
a. dark                      b. black                      c. bright                      d. cloudy

## II Listening and reading

### 1. Main points on listening and reading texts      نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Anish Kapoor's Sculptures	sculptor	Anish Kapoor is a sculptor.
	materials	He uses different materials and shapes for his works.
	math	He understands math and materials well.
	art	People can see his art all over the world.
	famous sculpture	Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture.
	sphere	It is made of stainless steel balls or spheres.
	stainless steel	It's made of stainless steel which is a very shiny and strong metal.
	Cloud Gate	Cloud Gate in Chicago is one of Kapoor's sculptures.
	reflect	It's made of stainless steel which reflects the sky like a huge mirror.
	popular	Cloud Gate is a very popular sight to visit.

### 2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

## Lesson 3

### A Night of Colors

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

We stand together in the cold, black night,  
The sky is dark and far away.  
Everything is quiet and still, until - BANG!  
The lights make the sky as bright as day.  
Rockets shoot up into the air,  
We shout and cheer, watching them fly.  
Colors burn brilliantly against the black,



We see them dance happily through the sky.  
The sound fills my ears, as each rocket takes off,  
Exploding noisily with flashes of light.  
Beads of red, yellow, silver, and gold,  
Are beautiful jewels in the black night.  
With blasts so loud and rockets up high,  
A colorful fire against the stars.  
The sky shines brightly with light and color,  
We hold our breath, looking out far.



## Lesson 4

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

### Anish Kapoor's sculptures

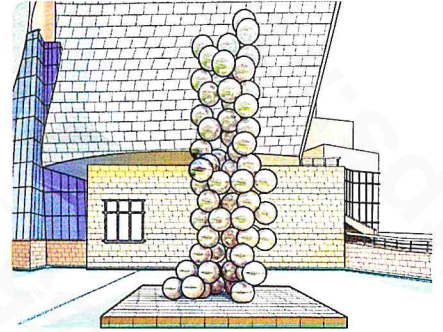
Anish Kapoor is a **sculptor**<sup>[1]</sup>. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places, and people can see his art all over the world.

Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous **sculpture**<sup>[2]</sup> by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain.

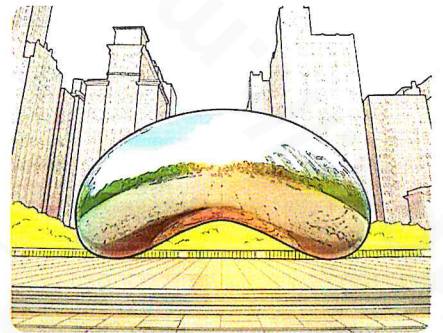
This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or **spheres**<sup>[3]</sup>.

Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an irregular **pattern**<sup>[4]</sup>. This makes them look like bubbles which are **floating**<sup>[5]</sup>!

Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.



Tall Tree and the Eye



Cloud Gate

[1] نحّات

[2] تمثال منحوت

[3] اجسام كروية

[4] نمط

[5] يطفو



For example, in Tall Tree and the Eye, Kapoor uses stainless steel because it is a very strong material. It's very good for outdoor sculptures because it stays shiny, and bad weather doesn't damage it.

Over the years, Kapoor has made many other famous sculptures. Another famous Kapoor's sculpture is Cloud Gate. You can see it in Chicago, USA.

Cloud Gate is very high - people can even walk under it! It is also made of stainless steel, which reflects the sky, the buildings, and the people around it, like a huge mirror. It is a very popular sight to visit in Chicago.

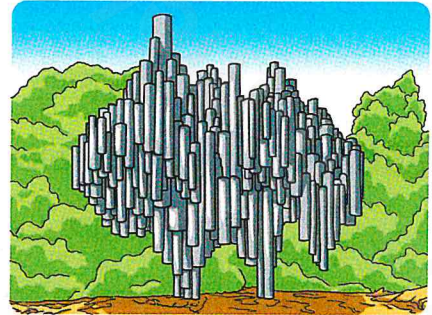
### The Sibelius monument

AB

The Sibelius **monument**<sup>[1]</sup> was built in 1967 to celebrate the famous **musician**<sup>[2]</sup> Jean Sibelius, who died in 1957.

Sibelius was from Finland, a country in northern Europe. Sibelius's work is still popular today and played at concerts and in **theaters**<sup>[3]</sup> all around the world.

The sculpture was created by the female artist Eila Hiltunen, who was also from Finland. The sculpture has 600 steel pipes of different sizes in an **irregular**<sup>[4]</sup> shape. It is 8.5 meters high and 10.5 meters wide. Hiltunen wanted the sculpture to look like the way Sibelius's music sounds. You can see this sculpture in the Sibelius Park, in Helsinki, the capital city of Finland.



The Sibelius monument

- |           |     |
|-----------|-----|
| آثر       | [1] |
| موسيقار   | [2] |
| مسارح     | [3] |
| غير منتظم | [4] |



### Pop Quiz

### on Reading

► Read and complete the text with words from the box.

sculptures - outdoor - sculptor - stainless - math

Kapoor is a great artist. He understands [1] ..... well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make [2] ..... that will stay in place for a long time. For example, in Tall Tree and the Eye, Kapoor uses [3] ..... steel because it is a very strong material. It's very good for [4] ..... sculptures because it stays shiny, and bad weather doesn't damage it.

# Test 2 | on Lessons 3 & 4

• نصوص الاستماع  
في نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة في اختبار الوحدة]

## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does Anish Kapoor do ?

.....

2. Where was he born ?

.....

3. What did he study ?

.....

4. What does he like to use ?

.....

(Qena - Qift 2025)

## 2 AB Read and complete the text with words from the box.

sculpture – steel – concerts – created – sculptor

Jean Sibelius was a famous musician from Finland, a country in northern Europe. Sibelius's work is still popular today and played at [1] ..... and in theaters all around the world. The Sibelius monument was a [2] ..... It was [3] ..... by the female artist Eila Hiltunen, who was also from Finland. The sculpture has 600 [4] ..... pipes of different sizes in an irregular shape. It is 8.5 meters high and 10.5 meters wide.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Tall Tree and the Eye is a **famous** sculpture by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain.

This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or spheres.

Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern. This makes them look like bubbles which are floating!

Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.



**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The general idea of the text is about "A .....".  
a. material                      b. museum                      c. sculpture                      d. subject
2. The underlined word "**famous**" means .....  
a. well-known                      b. terrible                      c. different                      d. dark

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What makes the spheres look like bubbles which are floating ?  
.....

4. How do you know that Kapoor is a great artist ?  
.....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. If you ..... hard, you get good grades. (Giza – South Giza 2025)  
a. studies                      b. study                      c. studying                      d. studied
2. If it is cold, I can ..... my jacket. (Minia – Bani Mazar 2025)  
a. wear                      b. wore                      c. wears                      d. wearing
3. If you don't have new ideas, ..... online.  
a. looks                      b. look                      c. looking                      d. looked
4. What ..... you do if you feel hot ?  
a. are                      b. did                      c. were                      d. do

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. **AB** Mukhtar – an – sculptor – was – **Mahmoud** – Egyptian.  
.....
2. **SB** verse – words – **How many** – each – in – rhyme ?  
.....

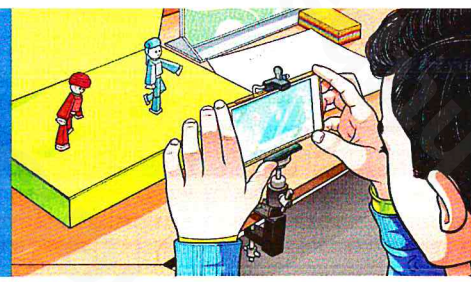
**6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**A famous sculptor**

**Guiding elements:**

- artist                      • understand                      • stainless steel                      • damage
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....



## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

talented	موهوب	photography	التصوير الفوتوغرافي
acting	فن التمثيل المسرحي	award	جائزة
cello	تشيلو [كمنجة كبيرة]	interviewer	مُحاور - القائم بالمقابلة
lump of clay	كتلة صلصال	perform	يؤدي - يعرض
pottery wheel	عجلة فخارية	stage	خشبة المسرح
musician	موسيقيار	costumes	أزياء خاصة
advertisement	إعلان	a play	مسرحية
apron	مريلة	choir	كورال [فريق من المنشدين]
kiln	فرن [للخرف]	edit	يُحرر - يُعدل
decorate	يزين - يزخرف	audience	جمهور [المسرح - السينما]
craft	حرفة	props	أدوات الديكور

## • Extra vocabulary

magazines	مجلات	hoopoe	هدهد
musical instrument	أداة/آلة موسيقية	confident	واثق
string	وتر [الآلات الموسيقية]	report	تقرير
surprised	مدهش	flat	مسطح - مستو
lucky	محظوظ	round	مستدير
violin	آلة الكمان	newspaper	جريدة
turn	يدور - دور	except	باستثناء / ماعدا
explain	يشرح	shelf	رف
button	زر / مفتاح	shadow	ظل
photographer	مصور	artwork	عمل فني
event	حدث	choice	اختيار
festival	مهرجان	excitedly	بانفعال / بحماسة
actor	ممثل	chance	فرصة

## • Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
choose يختار	chose	chosen
keep يحافظ	kept	kept
speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken



• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
stage	the part of a theater where actors act
award	a prize
musician	a person whose job is playing music
talented	with a special ability to do something well
cello	a kind of musical instrument with strings
perform	show your acting or musical skills to other people
lump	a solid object without a clear shape
wheel	a round flat circle which turns around
kiln	a very hot oven for making pottery hard and strong
clay	a natural material you can use to make pots, vases, or sculptures
apron	you wear this to keep your clothes clean
choir	a group of people who sing together
edit	to change photos to make them better
a play	a story that you watch at the theater
advertisement	this tells people about an event, so they want to see it
photography	the activity or job of taking photographs
exhibition	a group of artwork in one place for people to see
costumes	special clothes that people wear at festivals or on stage

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

put on = wear	يرتدى	for over an hour	لأكثر من ساعة
wait for	ينتظر	look very confident	يبدو واثق جدًا
cut up pieces of	يقطع قطعًا من	at the side of	بجانب / في جانب
blow up	ينفخ	Well done	أحسن
walk past .....	يمشي مازًا ب .....	ready to	مستعدًا لـ
work on a project	يقوم بأداء مشروع	look real	تبدو حقيقة



## Pop Quiz

## on Vocabulary

تدريب تلقائي  
يهدف لاتقان المفردات اللغوية



► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- A ..... is a part of the theater where actors act.  
a. kitchen      b. class      c. playground      d. stage  
(التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر - القاهرة / مصر الجديدة)
- A ..... is a very hot oven for making pottery hard and strong.  
a. kiln      b. freezer      c. fridge      d. lump  
(التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / المنيا)
- His job is playing music. He's a .....  
a. musician      b. poet      c. teacher      d. fisherman
- Rana won a/an ..... in the music competition.  
a. question      b. award      c. month      d. season
- She started her pottery project with a ..... of clay.  
a. lump      b. group      c. leaf      d. pair
- A ..... person has a special ability to do something well.  
a. busy      b. worried      c. talented      d. nervous
- A group of people who sing together is called " .....".  
a. team      b. choir      c. family      d. party
- ..... is the activity or job of taking photographs.  
a. Drawing      b. Driving      c. Photography      d. Singing
- A/An ..... is a group of artwork in one place for people to see.  
a. photo      b. exhibition      c. image      d. chance
- A story that you watch at the theater is called a/an .....  
a. play      b. instrument      c. photo      d. stage

## II Listening and Reading

### 1. Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
My pottery project	lump	We started our project with a lump of clay.
	pottery wheel	The teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel.
	apron	We put an apron over our clothes.
	kiln	The teacher put the bowl in the kiln.
	decorate	I used special paint to decorate my bowl.



Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The school show	school show	It was two weeks until the school show.
	piano	Waleed is going to play the piano.
	choir - songs	The choir is going to sing beautiful songs.
	costumes	Dalia is going to make costumes for the choir.
	photos - edited	Magdy is going to take photos of the show and edit them.
	school website	Magdy's photos were on the school website the next week.

## 2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

### Lesson 5

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

**Interviewer :** Wow, Mazen! The **concert**<sup>[1]</sup> was amazing! You're so **talented**<sup>[2]</sup>!

**Mazen :** Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm always tired after a concert!

**Interviewer:** I'm not surprised. You played the guitar and sang for over an hour!

**Mazen :** It went very quickly. But nobody knew about the problem I had before the concert!

**Interviewer:** A problem - what was that ?

**Mazen :** I couldn't find my guitar! I was practicing in a different room this morning, and I put my guitar somewhere, and later I forgot where. I looked **everywhere**<sup>[3]</sup>, even under all the chairs, but I couldn't find it! Five minutes before the concert, my friend came into the room. She saw it behind the door. I was very **lucky**<sup>[4]</sup>!

[1] حفلة موسيقية

[2] موهوب

[3] في كل مكان

[4] محظوظ

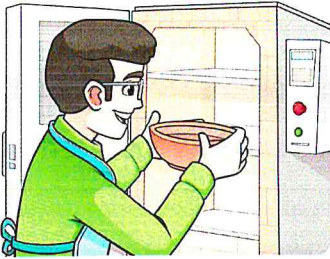
## My pottery project by Amal



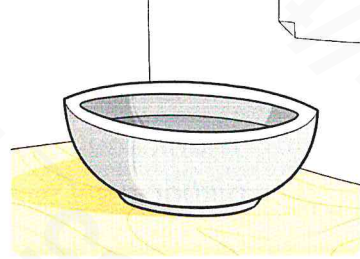
My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a lump of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl.



First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. We put on aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy.



When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong.



Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to decorate my bowl.



I painted it pink all over first, and waited for the paint to dry. Then I used different colors of paint to make circles all over it.



I really enjoyed making my bowl! When I finished my bowl, I gave it to my mom for her birthday. She loved it!



## Behind the camera

It was two weeks until the school show, and everybody was excited. Everybody except Magdy.

"I'm going to play the piano," said Waleed.

"The choir is going to sing beautiful songs," said Nesma.

"And I'm going to make **costumes**<sup>[1]</sup> for the choir," said Dalia.

"I've written a funny play!" said Samir.

Magdy was worried. He didn't go to piano lessons, and he didn't like singing.

"What am I going to do ?" he thought. On the way home, Magdy walked past the museum. There was an **advertisement**<sup>[2]</sup> for a photography exhibition. A black-and-white photo showed a man playing the piano on **stage**<sup>[3]</sup>, with the **audience**<sup>[4]</sup> in the shadow. "That's amazing," thought Magdy. It felt like he was there, listening to the music.

At home, Magdy started looking in cupboards.

"What are you doing ?" asked Mom.

"Dad has a good camera, doesn't he ?

Do you know where it is ?" asked Magdy.

"Yes," said Mom, taking a box from a shelf. "He hasn't used it for a long time. Are you studying photography at school ?"

"No, but I'll learn!" Magdy said.

Magdy found his dad's photography books. He read about the different buttons on the camera. Then he learned how to **edit**<sup>[5]</sup> the photos on the computer to make them lighter or darker.

Magdy was excited. On the weekend, his mom and dad took him to a photography exhibition. After the exhibition, they went into the city and Magdy took photos of things he saw.

Finally, Magdy spoke to his teacher. "Miss Salwa, I'm worried. I don't like being on stage. I don't like singing or acting, and I can't play an instrument."

"Magdy, this is a chance for you to do something you enjoy, to express yourself. Can you think of something ?" said his teacher.



[1] أزياء خاصة

[2] إعلان

[3] خشبة المسرح

[4] جمهور

[5] يعدل

"I know! I could be the photographer! I can be at the side of the stage while the class are performing. Then I can edit the photos for our school website," said Magdy.

Miss Salwa smiled and said, "Well done, Magdy. That's a great idea!"

The class practiced their instruments and learned their lines. On the evening of the show, they were happy and ready to perform. When each person was on stage, Magdy took photos.

Magdy's photos were on the school website the next week. "You're going to be a great photographer, Magdy," said his dad.

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

It was the day after the school show. Magdy's friend Samir was visiting his grandma.

"Hi, Grandma. I've come to visit you," said Samir.



"Hello, Samir," said Grandma. "How was the school show ? Were you in a play ?" "It was great, Grandma, but I wasn't in a play. Magdy and I don't like acting. Magdy was the photographer for the school show, but my job was better than that. I helped Mr Ibrahim make the props," said Samir excitedly.

"What are props ?" asked Grandma.

"Props are the things that actors need on stage to make the play look real," said Samir. "If the play is about a family at home in the living room, you need some furniture - like a couch, a lamp, or some pictures for the wall. Sometimes we get the things we need from parents. But sometimes we make them!"

"You make them?" said Grandma, looking surprised.

"Yes, I love making things, Grandma. We use wood, cardboard, colored paper.. anything ! My teacher Mr Ibrahim is very good at making things and he shows me what to do," explained Samir.

"That sounds exciting, Samir. I'd like to see some of the things you made," said Grandma.

"That's easy," said Samir. "Magdy put his photos on the school website. I'll get my phone and I'll show you!"



### III Language

#### 1 Prepositional phrase شِبْهَ الجُمْلَة

- A prepositional phrase is a group of words beginning with a preposition, and ending with a noun or pronoun, that the preposition refers to, and sometimes an adjective. It doesn't contain a verb.

• شِبْهَ الجُمْلَة هِيَ عِبَارَة عَنْ مَجْمُوعَة مِنَ الْكَلِمَاتِ الَّتِي تَبْدَأُ بِحَرْفٍ جَرٍ وَتَنْتَهِي بِاسْمٍ أَوْ ضَمِيرٍ الَّتِي يَشِيرُ إِلَيْهَا حَرْفُ الْجَرِّ، وَأَحْيَانًا تَحْتَوِي عَلَى صِفَةٍ وَلَا تَحْتَوِي عَلَى فِعْلٍ :

- Prepositions can include : يمكن أن تتضمن حروف الجر هذه الأحرف بالجدول التالي :

after	بعد	behind	خلف	in	في	under	تحت	with	مع
before	قبل	for	ل / لمدة	into	داخل	through	خلال	on	على

- e.g : I'm always tired after a concert.

preposition   noun   A prepositional phrase

She looked very confident at the concert.

preposition   noun   A prepositional phrase

Nadine never puts her cello behind the door.

preposition   noun   A prepositional phrase

#### 2 When عندما

- We can use "when" to talk about the order in which things happen. Both parts of the sentence are in the same tense.

• يمكننا أن نستخدم "when" للحديث عن الترتيب الذي تحدث به الأشياء. كلا الجزئين من الجملة في نفس الزمن.

- e.g : - **When** my bowl was finished, my teacher put it in a kiln.



#### Pop Quiz on Language

##### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Noha loves performing ..... stage. (Giza – English Inspection 2025)  
a. into                      b. on                      c. in                      d. of
- ..... going home, go to the supermarket.  
a. Under                      b. In                      c. Before                      d. Behind  
(Cairo - Helwan 2025)
- I looked ..... my bed, but I couldn't find anything.  
a. under                      b. before                      c. off                      d. of  
(Alexandria - Montaza 2025)

4. Who does he eat lunch ..... ?  
a. out                      b. with                      c. off                      d. up
5. Sami always puts his guitar ..... the door. (Giza - Warraq 2025)  
a. on                      b. behind                      c. in                      d. under
6. What do you usually do ..... school ?  
a. on                      b. after                      c. about                      d. of
7. She often gets nervous ..... a concert.  
a. to                      b. on                      c. before                      d. above
8. I always feel tired ..... doing exercises.  
a. before                      b. in                      c. after                      d. under
9. They played music ..... about two hours.  
a. on                      b. for                      c. under                      d. behind
10. When our teacher comes ..... the classroom, we stand up.  
a. into                      b. behind                      c. on                      d. for
11. The park ..... my house is beautiful.  
a. off                      b. behind                      c. for                      d. of
12. Honey is good ..... your health.  
a. of                      b. into                      c. on                      d. for
13. Let's pack our suitcase ..... we buy the tickets.  
a. under                      b. after                      c. in                      d. for
14. My uncle works ..... Alexandria.  
a. on                      b. in                      c. of                      d. behind
15. He ran because he was late ..... the concert.  
a. on                      b. for                      c. under                      d. behind

## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.



1. I help mom wash up the dishes ..... [in] dinner.  
(التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / العنبا / بنى مزار)
2. Actors love performing ..... [of] stage.  
(التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / البحيرة / كفر الحوار)
3. I do breathing exercises ..... [behind] I sleep.
4. .... [On] her poem, she talks about nature.
5. He has stayed at the hotel ..... [on] two days.
6. Students often get nervous ..... [after] the exam.
7. We walked quietly ..... [on] the library.
8. When I went to the zoo, I ..... [find] new animals there.
9. When the child ..... [puts] clay on the wheel, it went fast.



# Test 3 | on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

• نصوص الاستماع  
فى نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة فى اختبار الوحدة]

## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did Amira's class work on this week ?

.....

2. What did Amira want to make ?

.....

3. Who showed Amira how to use a pottery wheel ?

.....

4. Who did Amira give her bowl to ?

.....

(Aswan - Kom-Ombo 2025)

## 2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

guitar – concert – problem – award – talented

**Interviewer :** Wow, Mazen! The concert was amazing! You're so  
[1] .....

**Mazen :** Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm always tired after  
a [2] .....

**Interviewer :** I'm not surprised. You played the [3] ..... and  
sang for over an hour!

**Mazen :** It went very quickly. But nobody knew about the problem  
I had before the concert!

**Interviewer :** A [4] ..... - what was that ?

**Mazen :** I couldn't find my guitar! I was practicing in a different  
room this morning, and I put my guitar somewhere, and  
later I forgot where.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

If we were all the same, life would be **boring**. In Mrs Mona's class, Asser is different to his friends because he's tall and he has green eyes. He's good at science, but his friend Seleem is good at geography. Seleem's hair is straight, but Walid's hair is curly and he wears glasses. Injy has curly hair and wears braces to help her teeth get straight. The important thing is that we look after each other. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different. It's good that everyone is different. But, everyone is equally important.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The best title for the text is " ..... ".  
a. Different clothes                      b. We're all different  
c. Our community                      d. Science class
2. The opposite of the underlined word "**boring**" is .....  
a. different                      b. safe                      c. interesting                      d. straight

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What is Seleem good at ?  
.....

4. Why does Injy wear braces ?  
.....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. Mazen went to the beach ..... a sunny day.  
a. at                      b. on                      c. in                      d. of  
(Cairo - East Nasr City 2025)
2. He played the piano ..... one hour.  
a. for                      b. on                      c. behind                      d. into
3. Close the door quietly ..... you get out of the room.  
a. behind                      b. after                      c. on                      d. at
4. .... I finish my homework, I go to bed.  
a. When                      b. Where                      c. Who                      d. What

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. special – have – Actors – the play – costumes – for.

(Ismailia - English Inspection 2025)

.....

2. edit – how – He – to – learned – photos.

.....

**6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"A school show"**

**Guiding elements:**

- photographer      • stage      • the play      • props      • photos

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(Sharkia – East Zagazig 2024)



## Determine the meaning of words and phrases



تخبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.



التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد معنى كلمة أو عبارة في النص.



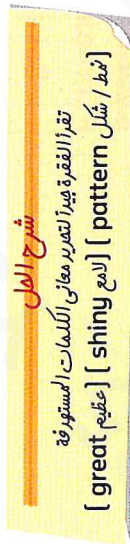
مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية وإذا واجهتك صعوبة في تحديد معنى الكلمة، اقرأ النص جيدًا وخذ المعنى من السياق.

### Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

#### Read and learn how to answer.

Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye sculpture, you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern. This makes them look like bubbles which are floating! Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.



1. The underlined word "shiny" in the text means ".....".  
a. gray      b. pale      c. bright      d. lucky
2. The underlined word "pattern" has the same meaning as .....  
a. movie      b. shape      c. idea      d. web
3. The underlined word "great" can be replaced by .....  
a. important      b. lazy      c. low      d. enormous

### Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

#### Read and answer the questions.

Sibelius was from Finland, a country in northern Europe. Sibelius's work is still popular today and played at concerts and in theaters all around the world.

The sculpture in the Sibelius park was created by the female artist Eila Hiltunen, who was also from Finland. The sculpture has 600 steel pipes of different sizes in an irregular shape. It is 8.5 meters high and 10.5 meters wide. Hiltunen wanted the sculpture to look like the way Sibelius's music sounds. You can see this sculpture in the Sibelius Park, in Helsinki, the capital city of Finland.

1. The underlined word "popular" means ".....".  
a. famous      b. regular      c. irregular      d. bad
2. The underlined word "created" means ".....".  
a. damaged      b. invited      c. made      d. decorated
3. The opposite of the underlined word "female" is ".....".  
a. daughter      b. woman      c. baby      d. male

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن [أنشطة إبداعية] و [مشروع الخزف] وتجد صعوبة في كتابة جملة عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها في تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

## Topic

## Creative activities

## Step 1 Review your vocabulary

## Write the meaning :

تعبير عن .....  
 صلصال .....  
 صناعة الأعمال الفنية .....  
 من المصنوعات .....  
 مواد قديمة .....  
 يحافظ على .....  
 تمثال منحوت .....  
 مبدع .....

## Pottery project

مربلة .....  
 كتلة .....  
 مشروع .....  
 قرن [للخزف] .....  
 عجلة فخارية .....  
 يزين .....

## Step 2

## Sentences

## Complete the sentences :

1. There are many ways to ..... yourself.
2. You can use plastic bottles and lids in ..... modeling.
3. Use ..... to make a bowl if you like pottery.
4. Use recycled cloth to ..... and help the planet .
5. You can make a beautiful ..... with a bit of everything .
6. You could use wood to make a .....

1. My class worked on a pottery ..... this week .
2. We started with a ..... of clay .
3. Our teacher showed us how to use a ..... It goes so fast .
4. We put on ..... over our clothes .
5. We put our pottery bowls in a ..... to make them hard .
6. We used special paint to ..... them .

## Step 3

## Topics

## Write a paragraph using the sentences :

## "Creative activities"

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

## Write a report using the sentences :

## "Pottery project"

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....



تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٧ جملة].

### 1 A creative project competition

There are so many different ways to express myself<sup>[1]</sup>. I can enter a competition using any kind of creative work<sup>[2]</sup>. I'm making some outdoor art for my creative project competition<sup>[3]</sup>. I use the things I find around me<sup>[4]</sup>. For example, I use leaves to make some outdoor art<sup>[5]</sup>. When it's windy, the leaves and flowers in my art move<sup>[6]</sup>. The back of the school playground is better to make the art<sup>[7]</sup>. When it rains, outdoor art looks terrible<sup>[8]</sup>! I decided to put big cloth over it until the rain stops<sup>[9]</sup>.

### 2 A school show

Yesterday, it was the school show<sup>[10]</sup>. It was great<sup>[11]</sup>. I was in a play because I like acting<sup>[12]</sup>. Tamer was the photographer for the school show<sup>[13]</sup>. When each person was on stage, Tamer took photos<sup>[14]</sup>. The play was about a family at home in the living room<sup>[15]</sup>. We needed some furniture like a sofa, a lamp, or some pictures for the wall<sup>[16]</sup>. My teacher Mr Ali is very good at making things<sup>[17]</sup>. He shows me what I do<sup>[18]</sup>.

### 3 A famous sculptor

From	omar@gmail.com
To	ali@gmail.com
Subject	a famous sculptor

Dear Ali,

How are things<sup>[19]</sup>? I'd like to tell you about a famous sculptor<sup>[20]</sup>. Anish Kapoor is a great artist<sup>[21]</sup>. He was born in India<sup>[22]</sup>. He studied art in the UK<sup>[23]</sup>. He likes to use new shapes as well as different materials<sup>[24]</sup>. He understands math well, and he also understands materials<sup>[25]</sup>. He can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time<sup>[26]</sup>. He uses stainless steel because it stays shiny and bad weather doesn't damage it<sup>[27]</sup>.

Yours,  
Omar



# Review on Unit 1

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الأولى فى ورقة واحدة

## Vocabulary

creative	مبدع - إبداعي	sculptor	نحات
exhibition	معرض - عرض	audience	جمهور
junk modeling	تصميم نماذج باستخدام مواد قديمة	reflect	يعكس
pottery	فن صناعة الأواني الفخارية	talented	موهوب
sculpture	فن النحت - تمثال منحوت	stage	خشبة المسرح
jewels	مجوهرات	craft	حرفة
		costumes	أزياء خاصة

## Language

### 1 Zero conditional الحالة الصفريّة

#### ► Formation :

Statement  
الجملة الخبرية

→ If إذا / When عندما + present simple, ... present simple / can + inf.

ex. - If you mix blue and red, you get purple.

If / When مضارع بسيط , imperative صيغة الأمر .

ex. - If someone tells you a secret, don't tell anyone.

Wh- Q.

السؤال بـ [أداة  
استفهام]

→ Q.W. + do / does + subj. + inf. + if / when + مضارع بسيط ...?

ex. - What do you do if/ when you feel sad?

### 2 Prepositional phrase شبه الجملة

• Prepositions can include :

after	بعد	behind	خلف	in	في	under	تحت	with	مع
before	قبل	for	لـ / لمدة	into	داخل	through	خلال	on	على

► ex. He is always tired after the workdays.



# Test 4 | on Unit 1

• نصوص الاستماع  
• فى نهاية الكتاب.  
• التقييمات الشهرية  
• فى نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is Maged's favorite hobby ?

2. Who helped Maged learn this hobby ?

3. What does the teacher ask Maged to do for the play ?

4. Why does Maged prefer using recycled cloth ?

## 2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

poem – sculpture – interesting – wood – competition

**Ehab** : Hello, Kareem. Did you go to the art club today ?

**Kareem** : No, I didn't.

**Ehab** : Did you hear about the art [1] .....

**Kareem** : Oh, wow. That sounds [2] .....

**Ehab** : What are you going to make for the competition ?

**Kareem** : I think about making a [3] .....

**Ehab** : What material are you going to use ?

**Kareem** : I like to use [4] .....

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a lump of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl.

First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. We put on aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy.

When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong.

Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to decorate my bowl.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is generally about " ....." .

a. Making clothes    b. A pottery project    c. A trip to a place    d. Special paints

2. The opposite of the underlined word "messy" is " ....." .

a. lucky

b. hot

c. wet

d. clean

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What did the writer want to make ?

4. How do they keep their clothes clean on a pottery project?

**4 The Reader**

**A. Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Asser's grandma was waiting him at the school gate. [.....]

2. Asser and Mayar had a hard time at grandma's house. [.....]

**B. Read and answer the questions.**

1. Who is Mrs Azza ?

2. What do grandma and children bake ?

**5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Heba often likes to read stories ..... she sleeps.

a. before                      b. after                      c. on                      d. at

2. We all cheered when the actors ..... on the stage.

a. appears                      b. appear                      c. appeared                      d. appearing

3. What do you do ..... Sundays ?

a. on                      b. into                      c. under                      d. through

4. You can't ..... the play if you forget the tickets.

a. watching                      b. watch                      c. to watch                      d. watches

**6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. like to – do – yourself – How – you – express ?

2. strings – a musical – The cello – instrument – is – with.

**7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

**A pottery project**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**Guiding elements:**

• kiln

• clay

• decorate

• aprons



## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When was the school show ?

.....

2. How many students were in the choir ?

.....

3. How was the play at the school show ?

.....

4. What did they do at the last part of the show ?

.....

(Cairo - East Nasr City 2025)

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

website – cinema – photos – exhibition – taking

Saleem is a creative photographer. He is good at [1] ..... photographs. On the weekend, his mom and dad took him to a photography [2] ..... After the exhibition, they went into the city and Saleem took [3] ..... of things he saw. He shared his photos on the school [4] ..... and his friends liked them very much.

(Giza – English Inspection 2025)

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954. He moved to London to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places. Tall tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. Kapoor is a good artist he understands math as well as materials. This means that he can make sculptures that can stay in place for a long time. For example, in Tall Tree and the Eye, Kapoor uses stainless steel because it is a very strong material. It also stays shiny and bad weather doesn't damage it. Cloud gate is another famous sculpture made by Kapoor. You can see it in Chicago, USA. Cloud Gate is very high. People can even walk under it.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Kapoor studied art in" .....".

a. Spain ..... b. India ..... c. London ..... d. USA .....

2. The text is generally about" .....".

a. Studying in London ..... b. Living in USA .....  
c. Stainless steel ..... d. Kapoor's sculptures .....

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What are Kapoor's famous sculptures ? Give two examples.

4. Why does Kapoor prefer using stainless steel ?

(Qalyoubia - Obour 2025)

**4 The Reader**

**A. Read and write YES or NO.**

(Sharkia - Hehia 2025)

1. Mrs Eman is Asser's teacher.

[.....]

2. Asser has a new book with words in braille.

[.....]

**B. Read and answer the questions.**

1. Where was Grandma waiting for Asser ?

(Cairo - Helwan 2025)

2. When did Mayar's parents learn Braille ?

(Sharkia - West Zagazig 2024)

**5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. If Sara has a pottery class, she ..... her apron.

(Alexandria - English Inspection 2025)

a. wearing

b. wear

c. wears

d. wore

2. .... you go to school, take your school bag.

(Sohag - Girga 2024)

a. What

b. Where

c. Who

d. When

3. I study well ..... the exam.

(Sharkia - Al-Husseiniyah 2024)

a. before

b. after

c. next

d. on

4. Jack walked ..... the forest.

(Port Said - East Port Said 2024)

a. through

b. out

c. on

d. for

**6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. steel - good - sculptures - is - for - Stainless .

(Minia - Bani Mazar 2025)

2. creative - you - do - What - like - activities ?

(Giza - Warraq 2024)

**7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**Creative activities**

**Guiding elements:**

• junk modeling

• pottery

• collage

• use

• skills

• paint

(Menofia - Sadat 2024/Giza - English Inspection 2025)



# UNIT

# 2

## Home is where the heart is

المنزل هو المكان الذي تستريح به

### Aims of Unit Two :

In this unit I will ...

- understand and use words for free-time activities.
- understand and use the first conditional.
- listen and understand people explaining their opinions.
- read and understand a science-fiction story.
- understand and use phrasal verbs.
- write an instructional guide.
- use definitions to explain new words.
- read and understand a mystery story.

### الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثانية :

- في هذه الوحدة سوف ...
- أفهم وأستخدم كلمات لأنشطة وقت الفراغ.
- أفهم وأستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى.
- أستمع وأفهم شرح الأشخاص لآرائهم.
- أقرأ وأفهم قصة خيال علمي.
- أفهم وأستخدم الأفعال الاصطلاحية.
- أكتب دليل إرشادي.
- أستخدم تعريفات لشرح الكلمات الجديدة.
- أقرأ وأفهم قصة غامضة.







## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

cartoons	رسوم متحركة	chess	لعبة الشطرنج
sporty	رياضي	push-up	تمارين الضغط
comic books	كتب مصورة مضحكة	apartment	شقة سكنية
vaccine	لقاح	games console	وحدة التحكم في الألعاب الإلكترونية
swap	يتبادل	hairdryer	مجفف الشعر
appliance	آلة - جهاز	toaster	محمصة خبز كهربائية
blade	شفرة	refrigerator	ثلاجة
motor	مُحرِّك - موتور	blender	خلاط
invention	اختراع	heat	يُسخن

## • Extra vocabulary

illness	مرض	awesome	مدهش - رائع	toast	خبز محمص
hobbies	هوايات	chat	بدرش	kettle	غلاية
PCs	أجهزة الحاسوب الشخصي	blend	يُمزج - يخلط	juicer	مِغصرة [أداة للعصر]
Polish	بولندي [الجنسية]	medicine	طب - دواء	organize	ينظم
invent	يخترع	scientist	عالِم	save	ينقذ / يوفر
sharp	حاد	decorations	زينة	trouble	مشكلة
board games	العب لوحية	mixer	خلاط	chop	يقطع - يفرم

## • Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
win يفوز	won	won
spend يقضي - ينفق	spent	spent
bring يحضر	brought	brought
hide يختبئ	hid	hidden
drive يقود	drove	driven
come يأتي	came	come

## • Did you know ?

- Egyptian families are getting smaller! Today, an average family has three or four people in one family home. In 2000, it was seven!



• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
milkshake	a drink that is often chocolate or vanilla
motor	a part of a machine that makes something move
invention	something that someone has made for the first time
smoothie	a drink made of blended fruits or sometimes vegetables
appliance	an object that is useful at home
vaccine	a type of medicine that stops you getting ill
blade	something sharp that cuts

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

do push-ups	يقوم بتمارين الضغط	spend time with	يقضى وقت مع
share with	يشارك مع	the same size as	نفس الحجم مثل
change over the years	تتغير على مر السنين	for the first time	لأول مرة
in the bottom of	في الجزء السفلى من	protect ... from	يحمى ... من
get stronger	يزداد قوة	save millions of lives	ينقذ حياة ملايين الأشخاص
get bored with	يشعر بالملل من		



**Pop Quiz**

**on Vocabulary**

**تدريب تلقائي**

يهدف لاثقان المفردات اللغوية



► **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. Refrigerators, blenders and toasters are ..... that we use in the kitchen.

a. games

b. appliances

c. festivals

d. places

(التقييمات الشهرية / أكتوبر / القاهرة / الساحل)

2. I do ..... in my room because I want to get stronger.

a. chess

b. cartoons

c. homework

d. push-ups

(التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر / الشرقية / الصالحية)

• **Did you know ?**

• One of the first cartoons was made in the early 1900s in France. It features a simple stick person moving!

• واحد من اوائل افلام الرسوم المتحركة صنع في اوائل القرن العشرين في فرنسا. وكان يُعرض شخص علي شكل عصاة بسيطة متحركة.

3. My bedroom is very big, so I ..... it with my brother.  
a. chat                      b. share                      c. spend                      d. finish
4. .... is a quite difficult board game.  
a. Taekwondo              b. Tennis                      c. Chess                      d. Volleyball
5. Let's buy different stories and ..... them after we finish reading.  
a. build                      b. play                      c. move                      d. swap
6. The sharp ..... in the bottom of the blender chops the food.  
a. motor                      b. blade                      c. fork                      d. spoon
7. I usually watch ..... on TV. They are funny !  
a. weather                      b. matches                      c. sports                      d. cartoons
8. .... is my favorite drink. It's often chocolate or vanilla.  
a. Orange juice              b. Tea                      c. Milkshake                      d. Lemonade
9. .... is a part of a machine that makes something move.  
a. Blade                      b. Motor                      c. Appliance                      d. Vaccine
10. .... is a type of medicine that stops you getting ill.  
a. Smoothie                      b. Vaccine                      c. Toaster                      d. Fever

## II Listening and Reading

### 1. Main points on listening and reading texts      نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

#### Lesson 1

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
My fantastic bedroom	apartment	Seleem's family moved into a new apartment a month ago.
	light	Seleem's room is very light and comfortable.
	share - bedroom	Seleem shares his bedroom with his brother.
	desk - PCs	Seleem and his brother have a long desk for their PCs.
	homework	They can do our homework in their bedroom.
	learn - violin	Seleem is learning to play the violin.
	sporty	Seleem's brother is sporty and he plays volleyball.
	chess club	Seleem and his friend play chess at the school chess club.



## Lesson 2

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Amazing appliances	appliance	I think the blender is the best kitchen appliance.
	milkshake	I use a blender for making milkshake with my mom.
	blade - chop	When the blade turns, it chops the food.
	motor	The motor turns the blade.
	vaccine	Blenders were used to make a vaccine.
	blenders - metal	There are blenders made of plastic, glass and metal.
	heat - food	Some blenders can heat food.

### 2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

## Lesson 1

### My fantastic bedroom by Seleem

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع و القراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

We moved into a new apartment a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom !

I love my new room. It's a very light and **comfortable**<sup>[1]</sup> room. I share it with my brother, Maged, and we're good friends.

We have a long desk for our **PCs**<sup>[2]</sup> so we can do our homework in our bedroom. That's much better than doing it in the living room ! There's too much noise there from our little sister and the TV !

When we finish our homework, we can play computer games with our friends - that's a lot of fun ! My favorite game is a building game. We watch cartoons with our friends, too.

I also love **swapping**<sup>[3]</sup> comic books, and like reading them in bed. My friends and I swap them once a week and talk about them.

I'm learning to play the violin at the moment, and I practice a lot. I'm not very good yet, so sometimes my brother gets bored with my music, especially when he's tired ! He's very sporty and plays a lot of volleyball, so he does **push-ups**<sup>[4]</sup> in our room - he often does 30 in the evening !



- [1] مريح
- [2] أجهزة الحاسوب
- الشخصي
- [3] تبديل
- [4] تمارين الضغط

Maged and I have many of the same friends. They're all **awesome**<sup>[5]</sup>. Before we moved, we only chatted to them online, but it's better now that we have a bigger bedroom. They come to our house to talk in our room.

One of our friends, Sherif, is an amazing chess player. We both play chess at the school chess club. Chess is quite difficult for me, but, **luckily**<sup>[6]</sup>, Sherif is helping me.

Maged and I like board games. We play them with our friends in our bedroom and with our family in the living room !

Mom and Dad's bedroom is next to ours. Their bedroom is the same size as ours, but they have their own bathroom. I prefer our bedroom - my favorite thing about it is that we have **space**<sup>[7]</sup> for our hobbies and for our friends !

[5] رائع

[6] لحسن الحظ

[7] مساحة - فراغ

## Lesson 2

### Amazing appliances

#### Pop Quiz

• ترجمة النصوص  
في نهاية الكتاب.  
• تدرب على  
من قطع الفهم  
ونصوص  
الاستماع

1. I think the blender is the best kitchen appliance ! If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie with fruit and ice !
2. I use it for making milkshakes with my mom. My mom uses it to make delicious soups, too.
3. Did you know a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922 ? He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new invention to make milkshakes.
4. Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist. In 1953, he used a blender to make a vaccine. His vaccine has saved millions of lives. People won't get sick if they have a vaccine.
5. Nowadays, the blender is a little different from the 1920s. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. Some blenders can heat food, too !



Karim



blender

Do you have a blender at home ? Do you use your blender a lot, or a little? What would you do without your blender in the kitchen?

#### Demonstrate understanding of specific details.

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل  
المحددة في النص.

#### Learn

1. Dr Jonas used a blender to make a .....

- a. invention      b. milkshake      c. vaccine      d. soup

#### Practice

2. The blender is a kitchen .....

- a. metal      b. appliance      c. board      d. advice



### III Language

#### The first conditional : الحالة الشرطية الأولى :

##### ► Usage : الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about future situations.

• نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لتحدث عن مواقف مستقبلية.

##### ► Formation : التكوين

To form it, we use "if" plus the present simple and "will", plus the infinitive :

• لتكوين الجملة نستخدم "if" يليها زمن المضارع البسيط ثم "will" ثم مصدر الفعل :

- We use "can" plus infinitive to express ability.

• نستخدم "can" ثم مصدر الفعل للتعبير عن القدرة.

- We use "may" plus infinitive when we aren't sure.

• نستخدم "may" ثم مصدر الفعل عندما نكون غير متأكدين.



• لاحظ وضع comma ( , ) قبل بداية الجملة الثانية في حالة وجود [If] في البداية.

ex. - If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie.

- People won't get sick if they have a vaccine.

- If she hurries, she may catch the train; I'm not sure.

- Dad can take you to school if you ask him now.



#### Pop Quiz on Language

##### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. If it ..... hot tomorrow, I will make a smoothie.

(Sharkia - Dyarb Negm 2025)

- a. be                      b. will be                      c. is                      d. was

2. I will ..... a new apartment if I have a good job.

(Kafr El-Sheikh - English Supervision 2025)

- a. buy                      b. bought                      c. buys                      d. to buy

3. Mazen ..... to your party if you don't invite him. (Minia - Mallawi 2025)

- a. didn't come                      b. can't come                      c. don't come                      d. isn't coming

4. If I have enough money, I ..... buy a new bike.  
a. was                      b. will                      c. would                      d. am
5. If she ..... late, we won't go to the cinema.  
a. comes                      b. come                      c. will come                      d. came
6. They ..... go to the club if they don't finish homework.  
a. didn't                      b. won't                      c. don't                      d. aren't
7. If you send the letter now, she ..... it tomorrow.  
a. receive                      b. can receive                      c. is receiving                      d. received
8. If you ..... me, I can finish in time.  
a. helped                      b. helps                      c. help                      d. helping
9. If she hurries, she ..... catch the train; I'm not sure.  
a. are                      b. can                      c. may                      d. will
10. If you put food in the refrigerator, it will ..... fresh.  
a. staying                      b. to stay                      c. stayed                      d. stay
11. If I see Ahmed, I can ..... him to call you.  
a. asked                      b. asks                      c. asking                      d. ask
12. If he ..... hard, he will pass the exams.  
a. studied                      b. study                      c. studies                      d. studying
13. If we ..... out tonight, we may go to the cinema.  
a. going                      b. go                      c. went                      d. goes
14. If you practice every day, you ..... play the violin well.  
a. will                      b. would                      c. could                      d. did
15. If they arrive late, their teacher will ..... angry.  
a. is                      b. be                      c. are                      d. was

## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.



1. If she ..... [want] to make juice, she will use the blender.  
(التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر / الشرقية - مشتول السوق)
2. If I wake up late, I'll ..... [missed] the bus.  
(التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر / المنيا / مطاى)
3. If he ..... [not study] harder, he won't pass the exam.
4. If you put out the trash, I ..... [put] away the dishes.
5. If I find your ring, I ..... [could give] it back to you.
6. If we don't finish the project, our teacher ..... [not be] proud of us.
7. He will ..... [cancels] the party if he is sick.
8. If they ..... [not stop] drinking fizzy drinks, they won't be healthy.
9. I will buy you chocolate cake if you ..... [passed] your exam.
10. If they don't ..... [won] the match, they will be out of the competition.



# Test 6 | on Lessons 1 & 2

• نصوص الاستماع  
فى نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل (تدريبات القصة فى اختبار الوحدة)

## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What did Stephen Poplawski invent ?  
.....
2. What did he put in a tall glass ?  
.....
3. What does the blade chop when it turns ?  
.....
4. What size was the motor he added ?  
.....

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

share – happy – room – bed – desk

We moved into a new apartment a month ago. I'm so [1] ..... because I have a new bedroom! I love my new [2] ..... It's a very light and comfortable room. I [3] ..... it with my brother, Maged, and we're good friends. We have a long [4] ..... for our PCs, so we can do our homework in our bedroom. That's much better than doing it in the living room! There's too much noise there from our little sister and the TV!

(Aswan - Kom Ombo 2025)

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hi, Laila

It's Grandma's birthday next week and we're organizing a special party for her. If we don't tell her, it'll be a big surprise. Uncle Amir and his family are arriving on Friday. If they bring lots of presents, we'll hide them in my room. Mom is going to cook lots of special food. If the weather is not too hot, we'll all eat outside. I'll help my sister to make a cake. We're going to use mom's new food mixer. Dad will buy some special decorations for the house. It will look really pretty when we put lots of lights around the house. Everyone will come to our house an hour before lunch. Then Dad will drive to Grandma's house to collect her. It's going to be great !

Love, Samira

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea in the letter is about " ..... ".  
a. Family's house b. Special food c. Grandma's birthday d. Samira's birthday
2. The underlined word "collect" means .....  
a. bring b. hide c. organize d. help

**B. Answer the following questions.**

### 3. Why are they organizing a special party ?

#### 4. How will Samira help ?

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. If I ..... late for school, I will take a taxi. (*Beheira - Abou El Matameer 2025*)

- a. am                      b. was                      c. had                      d. will be

2. If it is hot tomorrow, I can ..... a smoothie.

- a. making      b. made      c. make      d. to make

3. People ..... get sick if they have the vaccine.

- a. doesn't      b. won't      c. didn't      d. wasn't

4. They ..... plant red flowers if they have space. I'm not sure.

- a. has                      b. may                      c. do                      d. are

● **5** Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. comic – We – books – love – swapping – together.

2. at – have – **Do** – a refrigerator – home – you ?

6 Write an email of SEVENTY [70] words about your bedroom to your friend Essam. Your friend's email address is essam@yahoo.com. Your name is Mahdy and your email address is mahdy22@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

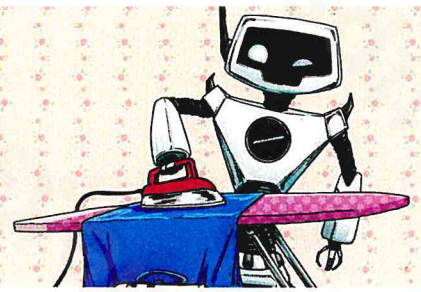
### Guiding elements:

- comfortable
- desk
- share
- computer games

The screenshot shows a web browser window with a single tab titled "New message x". The address bar displays "Secure | https:". The page content includes three input fields labeled "From:", "To:", and "Subject:" in red text. Below these is a large text area with horizontal dotted lines for composing a message. A faint "Studydrive" watermark is visible in the background.



- ▶ Explaining your opinion
- ▶ Story : The day the Bills broke down



## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

power socket	مقبس التيار الكهربى	power outage = power cut	انقطاع التيار الكهربى
extension cable	وصلة سلك [كابل]		
interactive whiteboard	السبورة التفاعلية	lighting	إضاءة
electricity	الكهرباء	programme	برنامج / برنامج
break down	يتعطل	battery	بطارية
shocked	مُروع / مصدوم	robot	إنسان آلى
terrible	سئ	chores	الأعمال المنزلية

## • Extra vocabulary

strange	غريب	plan	يخطط	bus stations	محطات أتوبيس
suddenly	فجأة	airport	مطار	traveling	السفر
useful	مفيد	discussion	مناقشة	free time	وقت الفراغ
disagree	لا يوافق - يعارض	electric	كهربى	busily	بنشاط / بهمة
microwave	فرن الميكروويف	pants	بنطلون	lazily	بكتل
normally	بصورة طبيعية	daughter	ابنة	fix	يصلح
humans	البشر	complicated	معقد	awful	فظيع - مزعج
quietly	بهدهوء	transportation		iron	يكوى
uniform	زى موحد	النقل والمواصلات			

## • Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
mean يعنى / يقصد	meant	meant
teach يُدرس	taught	taught
fall يقع - يسقط	fell	fallen
hit يصدم	hit	hit

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

What happened ?	ماذا حدث ؟	sit in a circle	يجلس في دائرة
In my opinion	في رأيي	go back	يعود - يرجع
learn how to	يتعلم كيف يقوم بـ	lay on	يستلقي على
[be] able to + inf.	قادر على	go on the internet	يتصل بـ الإنترنت
fill... with	يملأ بـ	at midnight	في منتصف الليل
do the chores	يقوم بأداء الأعمال المنزلية	decide to	يقرر أن



### Pop Quiz

### on Vocabulary



### ► Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- We need ..... to use electric appliances in our homes.  
(التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر / القاهرة / مصر الجديدة)  
a. electricity      b. wood      c. glass      d. ice
- ..... helps people move from one place to another.  
(التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر / المنيا / مطاى)  
a. Glass      b. Chess      c. Vaccine      d. Transportation
- My mom wakes up early to ..... our school uniforms.  
a. cut      b. chop      c. iron      d. heat
- I went to school very late because the school bus .....  
a. ran fast      b. worked well      c. broke down      d. arrived early
- My sister helps my mom do the ..... She usually washes the dishes.  
a. homework      b. chores      c. sport      d. research
- Using technology, scientists designed ..... to help us fix cars.  
a. airports      b. humans      c. robots      d. boards
- After the accident, the boys were ..... and scared.  
a. happy      b. shocked      c. funny      d. excited
- I had a/an ..... dream; it was about a dangerous car accident.  
a. nice      b. funny      c. awful      d. exciting
- We need electricity for ..... our homes. We can't live in the dark.  
a. studying      b. lighting      c. washing      d. treating
- There is a power ..... , so we can't use our electric kettle.  
a. socket      b. outage      c. energy      d. game



## II Listening and Reading

### 1. Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

#### Lesson 3

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
A strange day at school	power outage	Mariam had a strange day at school because they had a power outage.
	interactive	They were looking at the interactive whiteboard and suddenly all the information disappeared.
	power socket	The teacher tried a different power socket.
	electricity	They sat in a circle and talked about why electricity is important.
Why electricity is important in our lives	free time	We need electricity to use laptops, play video games or watch TV in our free time.
	light	Electricity is most important for lighting as we need lights in the evening.
	blender - electricity	We can't use our electric kettle, blender and refrigerator without electricity.
	cars - electricity	Some cars, buses and trains need electricity.

### 2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

#### Lesson 3

##### Mariam's day at school

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

**Mom** : Hi Mariam, how was your day ?

**Mariam**: Oh, hi Mom ! It was a strange day, actually. We had a **power outage**<sup>[1]</sup>! My class and I were looking at the **interactive whiteboard**<sup>[2]</sup>, when suddenly all the information disappeared.

**Mom** : Really ? That is strange ! What did Miss Amira do ?

**Mariam**: Well, first she got an **extension cable**<sup>[3]</sup> and tried a different **power socket**<sup>[4]</sup>, but that wasn't working either.

**Mom** : Oh no ! So, there was no **electricity**<sup>[5]</sup>! What happened ?

**Mariam**: We couldn't do the lesson Miss Amira planned. So she asked us all to sit in a circle and talk about why electricity is important in our lives.

**Mom** : Let me guess - everyone thought it was important for computer games !

**Mariam**: Ha ha! Actually, no. We all had lots of different ideas. It was a really interesting **discussion**<sup>[6]</sup>.

[1] انقطاع التيار الكهربائي

[2] السبورة التفاعلية

[3] وصلة سلك

[4] مقبس التيار

[5] الكهرباء

[6] مناقشة

### Whose opinion do you agree with most ?



Doha

In my opinion, electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop ! I do my homework on it, then I play video games with my brother. I love to watch television with my grandma in the evening, too.



Khaled

I know what you mean, but I think electricity is most important for lighting. I don't like the dark, and we need lights in the evening.



Salma

I don't agree. I think it's more important in the kitchen. We couldn't use our electric kettle without electricity, or our blender - or our refrigerator !



Tameem

What about transportation ?

Some people have electric cars. And bus stations and airports all need electricity, too.

## Lesson 4

### The Day the Bills broke down !

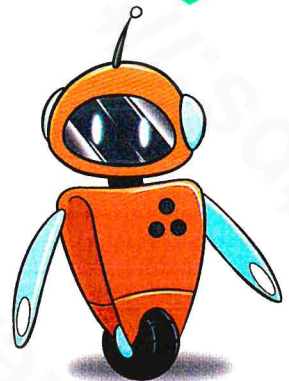
It's the Year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet ! Humans have easy lives because every family has a Bill robot which works 24 hours a day for them. The Bill robots do all their **chores**<sup>[1]</sup>. However, on this day, a year ago, something terrible happened.

The day started normally. In Australia , some Bills were ironing clothes for their humans to wear to work. In Italy, other Bills were quietly making milkshakes, and others were fixing cars. In Egypt, the Bills were making koshari for the next day's lunch. But then, all over the world, the **noise**<sup>[2]</sup> of the robots **suddenly**<sup>[3]</sup> stopped. All the Bills suddenly **broke down**<sup>[4]</sup>. They fell to the ground, and their lights went out.

One family in Alexandria was shocked when they saw

#### Pop Quiz

- ترجمة النصوص في نهاية الكتاب.
- تدرب على ٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع



[1] الاعمال المنزلية

[2] ضوضاء - صوت

[3] فجأة

[4] يتعطل



their Bill lying on the kitchen floor. They tried to wake him up. "Bill!" said Mom, "What happened? We're waiting for our koshari !" Bill said nothing. Hesham, the young son, started crying. "I need a clean uniform tomorrow," he said, "And who is going to iron my school pants ?" "This is awful ! I programmed Bill to fix my car and change the **battery**<sup>[5]</sup> in it. What am I going to do ?" Dad said.

Everyone looked very worried, but the daughter, Fareeda, said, "We'll just do some chores ourselves, like people did in the past. We'll go on the internet and find out how to do things. That's what Granddad told me people used to do."

The family started trying to learn things from videos. They learned how to use a blender and had milkshakes. Mom learned how to use the microwave so they could heat some food. They didn't really like that because Bill normally made the meals for the family. Dad tried to learn how to fix his car, but it was too difficult. And he **certainly**<sup>[6]</sup> didn't understand how to change the car battery - that was very **complicated**<sup>[7]</sup>. Hesham did well ! He quickly learned how to iron his own clothes for school !

Luckily, a computer engineer solved the problem the next day, and all the Bills started working again. The Bills in Egypt were busily cleaning cars, ready for work on Sunday. Life was normal again. **However**<sup>[8]</sup>, the **humans**<sup>[9]</sup> are now ready - **in case**<sup>[10]</sup> the Bills break down again one day ...

### Make logical inferences from the text.

الوصول لاستنتاج منطقي من النص

#### Learn

1. Why were people sad when their Bills broke down ?  
- Because Bills were doing all their chores.

#### Practice

2. What did the family feel when their Bill stopped working ?

[5] بطارية

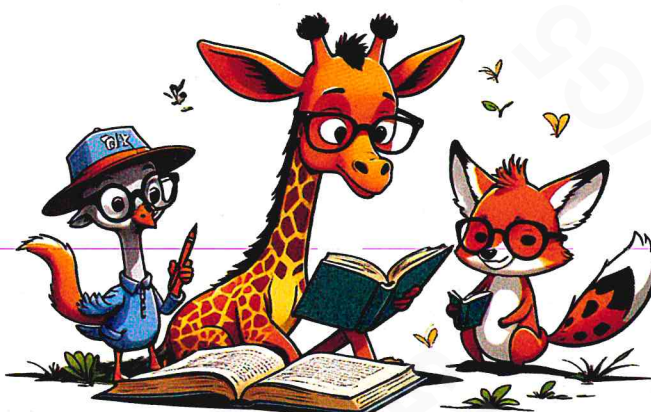
[6] بالتأكيد

[7] معقد

[8] ومع ذلك

[9] البشر

[10] في حالة



## on Lessons 3&4

• **تنويه:** نموذج اختبار كامل (تدريبات القصة في اختبار الوحدة)

1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does Mazen think is the most useful thing in our free time ?  
.....
2. Which device does he use to do his homework ?  
.....
3. Who does he play video games with ?  
.....
4. When does he love to watch TV with his grandma ?  
.....

• **2** Read and complete the text with words from the box.

desk – electricity – whiteboard – outage – cable

My name is Mariam. I had a strange day at school yesterday. My class had a power [1] ..... ! Our teacher was looking at the interactive [2] ....., when suddenly all the information disappeared. Our teacher got an extension [3] ..... and tried a different power socket, but that wasn't working either. We knew that there was no [4] ..... .

(Menoufia - Menouf 2024)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In the year 2089, every family around the world has a Bill robot which does all their chores. However, one day at midnight, all the Bills broke down and they weren't able to do any chores ! The Bills fell on the ground and their lights went out. Everyone was very worried ! One family in Alexandria didn't know what to do. The daughter, Fareeda, wanted to look for information on the internet. So, they watched lots of videos and they soon learned a lot of different things. They learned how to use the blender to make milkshakes, and Mom learned how to heat food in the microwave. Dad tried to fix his car and change the car battery, but he couldn't. It was too difficult. However, Fareeda's brother, Hesham learned how to iron his clothes for school.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The best title for the text is " .....".
- a. Future Jobs                                      b. House Chores  
c. Life Without Robots                          d. A Car Accident
2. The underlined word "fix" means .....
- a. damage                                      b. repair                                      c. sell                                      d. design



**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Why is the Bill robot important for every family ?

.....

4. What did Fareeda's brother learn to do ?

.....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Mom may ..... jam if she buys fresh strawberries.  
a. make                      b. makes                      c. made                      d. making
- If we have free time, we ..... join the sports club.  
a. were                      b. will                      c. are                      d. do
- They can't answer the question ..... they don't do their homework.  
a. and                      b. but                      c. what                      d. if
- We can ..... fishing if we learn how to catch fish.  
a. to go                      b. goes                      c. go                      d. going

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. to fix – the robot – I – my – programmed – car. (Sharkya - East Zagazig 2025)

.....

2. using – like – Bill robot – you – a – Do ? (Cairo - Ain Shams 2025)

.....

**6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**Why is electricity important ?**

Guiding elements:

- opinion    • electricity    • free time    • laptop    • kitchen    • electric kettle

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(Minya - Mallawi 2024)



## I Vocabulary

### • Key vocabulary

stroke	يلطف / يداعب	collar	طوق [حول الرقبة]
sharpen	يُحْد - يجعله حادًا	claws	مخالب
spare room	غرفة مخصصة للمخزن أو للضيوف	florist	بائع الزهور
memories	ذكريات	fertilizer	سماد
vaccination	تطعيم	attention	عناية - اهتمام
attic	سقيفة [غرفة علوية للتخزين]	curious	فضول - محب للاستطلاع
scratch post	عمود خدش	underneath	في الأسفل / تحت
equipment	معدات	furry	مغطى بالفراء
shocked	مصدوم		

### • Chores الأعمال المنزلية

mop up the water	يجفف المياه	hang up the clothes	يُعلق الملابس
pick up the books	يجمع الكتب	clean up the kitchen	ينظف المطبخ
tidy up my room	أرتب غرفتي	put out the garbage	يُخرج القمامة
put away the dishes	يضع الأطباق في مكانها		

### • Extra vocabulary

pet	حيوان أليف	message	رسالة	space	مساحة - مسافة
chin	ذقن	glad	مسرور - مبتهج	temperature	درجة الحرارة
warm	دافئ	pull	يجذب - يسحب	indoor	داخلي
gently	برفق - بلطف	owner	مالك	prefer	يفضل
wooden pole	عمود خشبي	closely	بدقة - بعناية	perfect	مثالي - ممتاز
treatment	علاج	amount	كمية	instructions	تعليمات
dining table	شجرة المائدة	leather	جلد	downstairs	الطابق السفلي
spray	برش	couch	أريكة [كنبة]	dust	يزيل الغبار
assistant	مساعد	full	ممتلئ - مكتمل	childhood	طفولة
great-grandmother	الجددة الكبرى	instructional guide	دليل إرشادي	brick	قالب من الطوب



• **Conjugation of irregular verbs** تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
dig يحفر	dug	dug
give يعطى	gave	given
feed يُطعم	fed	fed
grow يزرع	grew	grown
say يقول	said	said
tell يخبر	told	told
write يكتب	wrote	written
hang يُعلق	hung	hung

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
scratch post	a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on
vaccination	a treatment from the vet to stop pets getting sick
furry	have a lot of soft hair
collar	a long thin piece of leather to wear around its neck
fertilizer	special food for plants
florist	a shop which sells cut flowers for the home
gently	you add something slowly
dust	dry dirt
spray	you use a special water bottle to blow tiny drops of water
curious	interested, feeling you want to know more
brick	a small block for building

shocked	very surprised
great-grandmother	the mother of your grandparent
spare room	a room that is used for visitors or to put things in
kitten	a baby cat

### • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look after	يعتني بـ	interested in	مهتم بـ
try on	يقيس [ملابس ...]	give some advice	يعطي بعض النصائح
feel at home	يشعر كأنه في موطنه	make sure	يتأكد
get lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق	remove bugs	يزيل حشرات
jump off .....	يقفز من على .....	go into = enter	يدخل
Let's go up	دعنا نصعد	used for	يستخدم لـ
at the end of	في نهاية	belong to	يخص - ينسب / ينتمي إلى



### Pop Quiz

### on Vocabulary

### تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لاثقان المفردات اللغوية



### ► Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The vet gives my cat a ..... to stop it from getting sick.

(التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر / المنيا / مطاي)

- a. collar      b. pole      c. vaccination      d. toy

2. Cats are very ..... . This means that they have a lot of soft hair.

- a. furry      b. wild      c. dangerous      d. lazy

3. We must give our children lots of ..... and look after them.

- a. fertilizer      b. temperature      c. dust      d. attention

4. The cat needs a scratch post to ..... its claws.

- a. cut      b. sharpen      c. slice      d. spray

5. The garbage can be ..... , so I need to put out the garbage.

- a. fall      b. empty      c. full      d. clean



6. I can sit and sleep on a ..... in the living room.  
a. shelf                      b. couch                      c. table                      d. cupboard
7. I wrote my cat's name and address on its .....  
a. head                      b. tail                      c. collar                      d. claws
8. A ..... room is a room that is used for visitors.  
a. dining                      b. spare                      c. living                      d. bath
9. My brother is ..... , he wants to know more about different things.  
a. lazy                      b. curious                      c. boring                      d. kind
10. The gardener ..... the plants with fresh water to clean them.  
a. hangs                      b. sharpens                      c. sprays                      d. pulls
11. We can buy beautiful plants from the .....  
a. shoemaker                      b. florist                      c. vet                      d. bookseller
12. A ..... is a small block used for building houses.  
a. post                      b. pole                      c. brick                      d. cube

# Interactive

## Notebook

• كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي  
• يمكنك من إتقان المفردات اللغوية ( التسميع )  
والقواعد اللغوية وتدريبات على الوحدات



## II Listening and Reading

### 1. Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

#### Lesson 6

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Caring for your cat	attention	Give your cat lots of attention.
	stroke	You should stroke your cat.
	sleep - warm	Cats like to sleep in a warm, comfortable bed.
	couch	Cats sometimes sleep on the couch.
	meals	Cats like small meals at different times in the day.
	scratch post	A cat needs a scratch post to sharpen its claws.
	collar	A collar with the cat's name and address helps if it gets lost.
	vaccinations	Cats should go to the vet once a year for vaccinations.
Caring for your turtle	eat - flowers	Turtles like to eat flowers and plants.
	buy - food	You can buy special turtle food.
	turtles - space	Turtles need a very large space for their home.
	soil - dig	Turtles need clean soil to dig in it.
	heat lamp	They sometimes need a heat lamp to keep them warm.
	sleep - temperature	Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change.

### 2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

#### Lesson 6

##### Caring for your cat

##### How can I make my cat feel at home ?

Give your cat lots of **attention**<sup>[1]</sup> so it feels safe. You should **stroke**<sup>[2]</sup> it. This means that you should move your hand over its back, or under its chin - cats love this !

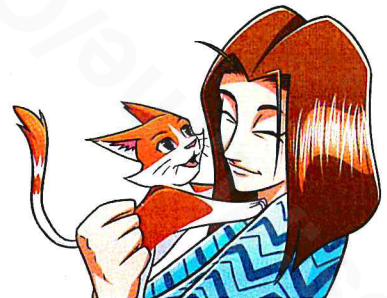
##### Where do cats like sleeping ?

They like a warm, comfortable bed, but sometimes they just sleep on the **couch**<sup>[3]</sup> !  
Don't wake it up - cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day !

[1] اهتمام [2] يلاطف [3] أريكة

##### Pop Quiz

- ترجمة النصوص في نهاية الكتاب.
- تدرب على 4 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع





### What do cats eat ?

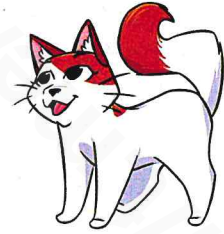
They like small meals at different times in the day. Cats shouldn't have much milk to drink. Milk is bad for them. Water is better.

### What equipment<sup>[4]</sup> does a cat need ?

A cat needs a **scratch post**<sup>[5]</sup>. This is a strong wooden pole which the cat can **sharpen**<sup>[6]</sup> its claws on. Cats also like toys to play with. A **collar**<sup>[7]</sup> with the cat's name and address on it is a good idea. If your cat gets lost, somebody can bring it home to you.

### How often should cats go to the vet ?

Cats should go to the vet once a year for **vaccinations**<sup>[8]</sup>. These stop them from getting sick. If you look after your cat well, you'll have a new furry friend in your life !



A cat sharpening its claws

[4] معدات

[5] عمود خدش

[6] يحد

[7] طوق

[8] تطعيمات

## Caring for your turtle

### What do turtles eat ?

These animals like to eat flowers and plants. You can also buy special turtle food.

### How can I make my turtles feel at home ?

Turtles need a very **large** space for their home. A bigger turtle needs a bigger space ! They need clean soil to dig in, too.

### What equipment do turtles need ?

They sometimes need a heat lamp. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm.

### Where do turtles sleep ?

Turtles like sleeping in a safe, **dark** place where the temperature doesn't change.



### Determine the meaning of words in a text.

تحديد معنى كلمات في النص.

#### Learn

1. The opposite of the word "**dark**" is ".....".

a. clean

b. light

c. special

d. warm

#### Practice

2. The word "**large**" means ".....".

a. safe

b. cool

c. big

d. hard

## Caring for your indoor plants

AB

### Where can I buy an indoor plant ?

You can buy indoor plants from supermarkets, florists, and garden centers. These are stores that sell many different plants. It might be best to buy from a garden center as the assistants know how to look after the plants and they can give you some useful advice. Make sure you know what your plant is called so you can find out more about it.



**Where should I put my indoor plant ?**

Some plants need to be in a warm, sunny place with a lot of light, while others prefer a cool place that isn't sunny. Look on the internet to find the best place for your plant. Most plants don't like you to move them. So, find the perfect place and leave it there.

**Do plants need food ?**

Yes ! The best time to feed your plant is spring and summer. Feed them with fertilizer. This is special plant food. Read the instructions carefully, because too much fertilizer can be bad for plants.

**How often should I water the plant ?**

Some plants don't need much water and others need more. You can check the internet for more information. If you don't know, it's better to give them too little water than too much.

**How should I clean my indoor plant ?**

Use a soft brush or cotton cloth to dust the leaves. This means that you clean dry dirt from the leaves. For plants with thicker leaves, spray them with water and this will keep them healthy.

**Did you know ?**

If you keep your plants happy and healthy, they will live for many years.

## Lesson 7

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع و القراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

### The special house

Sameh and Nadine were on school vacation at home with their parents. One morning, Sameh was in the living room, playing with his new kitten. Suddenly, the kitten jumped off the chair and ran through a small hole in the wall! Sameh put his hand through the hole to get her, but all he could feel was some paper.

He pulled the paper - it was very old. On it, there was a message in a child's writing : Hello, I'm Monira ! I live here. Sameh felt very curious.

The next day, it was raining. Sameh and his sister, Nadine, were feeling bored. "Let's go up and look in the spare room," Sameh said.

In the spare room, they found some old boxes. Sameh looked in one of the boxes and found a little house and a doll. The doll was beautiful, and underneath, there was a birthday card : To Monira on your birthday, much love, Grandma. Just then, their Dad called them downstairs. "Dad !" said Sameh. "Who is Monira ?". Dad looked shocked.

"Why are you asking that ?" he said.

"Look at this doll and this card !" replied Sameh.





"I don't believe it !" said Dad, looking at the things. "Let me tell you about the history of this house. It was built from bricks and stone in the 1950s. My grandma – your great-grandmother – lived here with her mom, dad, and five brothers and sisters."

"Wow ! Do you think the house was very small for them ?" said Nadine.

"Yes," said Dad. "There were eight people and only three bedrooms !"

"Do you think they were happy ?" asked Sameh.

"I think they were very happy, just like we are" said Dad.

"But is the house different now ?" asked Nadine.

"Well," said Dad, "not really. The walls are a different color, but I think that's all. I'm glad it hasn't changed because I have such great memories of growing up here too."

"But you still haven't told us who Monira is !" said Sameh.

"Well, you already know her," said Dad. "Monira was your great-grandmother – Granddad's mom ! I guess you have never heard her first name before. The things that you found are from her childhood. I'm so happy we have them ! Thank you two !"

### III Language

#### Phrasal verbs : الأفعال الاصطلاحية

A phrasal verb is a verb followed by a preposition, such as up, over, in, on, away.

• الأفعال الاصطلاحية هي عبارة عن فعل متبوع بحرف جر مثل up بمعنى [فوق]، over بمعنى [على]، in بمعنى [في]، on بمعنى [على]، away بمعنى [بعيداً].

• **لاحظ أن:** قد يتغير معنى الفعل إذا تم إضافة حرف جر له.

ينظر إلى  
Look at  
verb preposition

• Look up يبحث عن كلمة في قاموس  
• Look after يعتني بـ

Phrasal verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية	• mop up يجفف	• cut out يقطع	• pick up يلتقط
	• hang up يعلق	• put out يطفئ	• tidy up يرتب
	• put away يضع بعيداً	• clean up ينظف	

• إليك بعض الأمثلة على الأفعال الاصطلاحية لتوضيح ما سبق شرحه.

Phrasal verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية	Meaning المعنى	Examples أمثلة
mop up	يجفف / يمسح	- She <b>mopped up</b> the juice on the floor.
hang up	يعلق / يمسح	- I'll <b>hang up</b> my clothes before I go to bed.



## Pop Quiz

## on Language

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. I'll mop ..... the water on the floor. Don't worry.

(Kafra El-Sheikh - English Supervision 2025)

a. out                      b. up                      c. in                      d. away

2. We need to clean ..... the floor.

(Sharqia - East Zagzig 2025)

a. away                      b. up                      c. on                      d. out

3. Hana ..... her dresses to keep them clean and tidy.

(Giza - English Inspection 2025)

a. hangs up                      b. picks up                      c. puts out                      d. mops up

4. Please, help me pick ..... the books.

a. up                      b. off                      c. down                      d. on

5. Can you put ..... the dishes after dinner ?

a. on                      b. in                      c. away                      d. of

6. She always tidies ..... her room in the evening.

a. away                      b. out                      c. off                      d. up

7. We will ..... our house after the party.

a. put out                      b. hang up                      c. clean up                      d. pick up

8. Your clothes are everywhere, please hang them .....

a. in                      b. out                      c. up                      d. down

9. You need to pick ..... your toys from the floor.

a. under                      b. for                      c. up                      d. in

10. Can you put ..... the garbage ?

a. down                      b. on                      c. up                      d. out

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية



1. He has put ..... [over] his clothes and now the room is tidy.

(التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر / الجيزة / الشيخ زايد)

2. She is cleaning ..... [of] the kitchen.

(التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر / المنيا / مطاى)

3. They are tidying ..... [on] the living room together.

4. My dad puts ..... [in] the garbage every day.

5. Can you help me hang ..... [off] my clothes in the cupboard, please ?

6. The floor is wet. Mop it ..... [in], please.

7. I will clean ..... [on] my room tomorrow.

8. Would you like me to mop ..... [down] the juice ?

9. We'll help you tidy ..... [of] your bedroom.

10. She will put ..... [out] her son's toys after he sleeps.



## IV Writing skill

### Definitions

#### ► Use definitions to explain what you mean .

استخدم التعريفات لشرح ما تقصده .

- When we are writing, we can use **This is** , or **This means that** to explain words to the reader.

• عندما نقوم بالكتابة يمكننا استخدام "**This is**" بمعنى [هذا يكون] أو [**This means that**] بمعنى [هذا يعني أن] لشرح كلمات للقارئ.

- Use **This is** before a noun phrase, for example :

• استخدم "**This is**" قبل عبارة اسمية مثل.

- A cat needs a scratch post. **This is** a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on.

- Use **This means that** before a full sentence with a subject and a verb :

• استخدم [**This means that**] قبل جملة كاملة تتكون من فاعل و فعل.

- Stroke it. **This means that** you should move your hand over its back or under its chin-cats love this!



#### Pop Quiz

#### on Writing skill

#### ► Circle the correct answer.

1. Cats are very furry. **This means that** / **This is** they have a lot of soft fur.
2. Camels can live in the desert. **This means that** / **This is** a dry area of land covered with sand.
3. Feed your plants with fertilizer. **This means that** / **This is** special plant food.
4. You have to water your plants gently. **This means that** / **This is** you add the water slowly.
5. You can buy flowers from a florist. **This means that** / **This is** a person who sells flowers.

#### Lists

- When writing lists, remember to add commas.

عندما تكتب قائمة، تذكر أن تضيف الفاصلة السفلية بين العناصر المختلفة.

**ex.** Plants need sunlight, space, fertilizer and water.

## • Instructional guide :

دليل إرشادي :

Tips to write an instructional guide :

نصائح لكتابة دليل إرشادي :

1. Write a short question as a heading for each paragraph.

١. اكتب سؤال قصير كعنوان رئيسي لكل فقرة إنشائية.

2. Set your information in clear, short paragraphs.

٢. ضع معلوماتك في فقرات قصيرة واضحة.

3. Write definitions for difficult words.

٣. اكتب تعريفات للكلمات الصعبة.



Pop Quiz

on Writing skill

► Write an instructional guide for a pet.

### Caring for your pet

1. How can I make my pet feel at home ?

.....

.....

2. Where does my pet like sleeping ?

.....

.....

3. What does my pet eat ?

.....

.....

4. What equipment does my pet need ?

.....

.....

5. How often should my pet go to the vet ?

.....

.....

**A week is  
enough**

مراجعة المنهج و التمكن منه في  
اسبوع واحد فقط





# Test 8 | on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

• نصوص الاستماع  
فى نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة فى اختبار الوحدة]

## • 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What do turtles like to eat ?  
.....
2. What do turtles need for their home ?  
.....
3. Why do turtles need soil ?  
.....
4. What do turtles need to keep them warm ?  
.....

## • 2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

meals – sharpen – attention – money – care

**Fatma :** Hello Noha, is this your cat ?

**Noha :** Yes, it is called Monda.

**Fatma :** I like cats, but I don't know how I [1] ..... for them.

**Noha :** Cats need a lot of [2] ..... to feel safe.

**Fatma :** When do they eat ?

**Noha :** They like small [3] ..... at different times in the day.

**Fatma :** What equipment does a cat need ?

**Noha :** A cat needs a scratch post to [4] ..... its claws.

## • 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Dogs are my favorite animals and I think they are the best pets. They are cute with soft fur which is nice to touch. They have either long or short fur. They are strong animals and they are friendly. They like people and they love to go out, so I need to take them for a walk every day. They like to play with me every day. Dogs have strong claws and sharp teeth. People also say that when you pet a dog, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well being, too.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about " ....." .

- a. Cats                      b. Dogs                      c. Lions                      d. Elephants

2. The underlined word "pets" means animals we can keep at .....

- a. school                      b. work                      c. home                      d. night

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. How can keeping a dog make you happy ?  
.....
4. How often do you take your dog for a walk ?  
.....

(Suez - North Suez 2024)

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. If you hang ..... your clothes, your bedroom will look better.  
(Minia - Maghagha 2025)  
a. away                      b. in                      c. up                      d. out
2. I'll put ..... the dishes after I wash them.  
a. away                      b. in                      c. up                      d. out
3. They are tidying ..... the living room for the party.  
a. out                      b. up                      c. on                      d. away
4. My dad puts ..... the garbage every day.  
a. up                      b. out                      c. on                      d. off

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. can - Where - buy - I - an indoor- plant ?  
.....  
(Cairo - Helwan 2025)
2. up - the - She - kitchen - cleaned - yesterday .  
.....

**6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**The special house**

**Guiding elements:**

- How old is your home ?
- Where is your home ?
- Who has lived there ?
- How has your home changed ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## Make logical inferences from the text



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في وضع استنتاج منطقي لبعض المعلومات وقد تكون الإجابة غير موجودة في النص بشكل مباشر.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على فهم النص جيداً لأن الإجابة قد تكون غير موجودة بشكل مباشر في النص وتكون استنتاج للمعلومات الواردة.

### Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

#### Read and learn how to answer.

Did you know a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922 ? He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor.

The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new invention to make milkshakes.

Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist. In 1953, he used a blender to make a vaccine. His vaccine has saved millions of lives. People won't get sick if they have a vaccine.

#### شرح المل

تقوم المعلومات الواردة ببناء من استنتاج معلومات أخرى مثلاً:

• استنتاج استنتاج اقتراحه البربر (الغلاط) في صناعة العليب، المفقوق فستنتج من ذلك أنه يجب

العليب المفقوق من المشروبات.

• استنتاج كوتور جونس أنموذ الغلاط في صناعة اللقاح فستنتج من ذلك أنه مفيد في الطب.

1. Do you think Stephen liked milkshakes ? Why ?

- Yes, because he used his new invention to make milkshakes.

2. Why do you think the blenders are useful in medicine ?

- Because Dr Jonas used them to make a vaccine.

### Step 2

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

#### Read and answer the questions.

Cats like a warm, comfortable bed but sometimes they just sleep on the couch ! Don't wake them up - cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day !

They like small meals at different times in the day. Cats shouldn't have much milk to drink. Milk is bad for them. Water is better.

A cat needs a scratch post. This is a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on. Cats also like toys to play with. A collar with the cat's name and address on it is a good idea. If your cat gets lost, somebody can bring it home to you.

1. Do you think cats like sleeping on a cold, hard floor ? Why ?

2. Why do you think it is a good idea to write the cat's name and address on a collar ?



يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [غرفة النوم الخاصة بك] و [الاعتناء بالقطط] وتجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.



مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها في تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic

Your bedroom

Caring for your cat

Step 1 Review your vocabulary

Write the meaning :

يتشارك .....  
شقة سكنية .....  
مكتب .....  
غرفة النوم .....  
هوايات .....  
مريح .....  
العاب لوحية .....

يداعب - يلطف .....  
اهتمام .....  
وجبات .....  
اللفاح - التطعيم .....  
يحد - يجعله حاد .....  
طوق [حول الرقبة] .....

Step 2 Sentences

Complete the sentences :

1. We moved to a new ..... last week.  
2. I love my new ..... because it is a very comfortable room.  
3. I ..... my room with my sister.  
4. We have a long ..... for our PCs.  
5. We play ..... in our bedroom.  
6. We have space for our ..... like reading and video games.

1. Give your cat lots of ..... to feel safe.  
2. You should ..... your cat over its back or under its chin.  
3. Cats like to eat small ..... at different times.  
4. A cat needs a scratch post to ..... its claws on.  
5. Cats should go to the vet for ..... once a year.

Step 3 Topics

Write a paragraph using the sentences on :

"Your bedroom"

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

Write an instructional guide using the sentences on :

"Caring for your cat"

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....



تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٣١ جملة].

### 1 A description of a room

We moved into a new apartment last month<sup>[1]</sup>. I'm happy because I have a new room<sup>[2]</sup>. My new room is large, light and more comfortable<sup>[3]</sup>. I share it with my brother, Hassan<sup>[4]</sup>. We are always good friends<sup>[5]</sup>. We have a long desk for PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom<sup>[6]</sup>. When we finish our homework, we can play computer games in our room<sup>[7]</sup>. We watch cartoons with our friends, too<sup>[8]</sup>.

### 2 Amazing appliances

I think the blender is one of the most important appliances in the kitchen<sup>[9]</sup>. It is made by a Polish - American man<sup>[10]</sup>. He is called Stephen<sup>[11]</sup>. He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass<sup>[12]</sup>. When the blade turns, it chops the food<sup>[13]</sup>. He added a small motor which turned the blade to blend the food together<sup>[14]</sup>. He used his new invention to make milkshakes<sup>[15]</sup>.

### 3 Caring for your cat

Give your cat lots of attention so it feels safe<sup>[16]</sup>. You should move your hand over its back, or under its chin<sup>[17]</sup>. Cats love this<sup>[18]</sup>! They like a warm, comfortable bed<sup>[19]</sup>. Don't wake it up - cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day<sup>[20]</sup>! They like small meals at different times in the day<sup>[21]</sup>. If you look after your cat well, you'll have a new furry friend in your life<sup>[22]</sup>!

### 4 Caring for your turtle

From	tarek@gmail.com
To	taha@gmail.com
Subject	caring for your turtle

Hi Taha,

I'm glad to send you this email<sup>[23]</sup>. How are you and your family<sup>[24]</sup>? I send you this email to tell you about how to care for your turtle<sup>[25]</sup>. These animals like to eat flowers and plants<sup>[26]</sup>. Turtles need a very large space for their home<sup>[27]</sup>. A bigger turtle needs a bigger space<sup>[28]</sup>! They need clean soil to dig in, too<sup>[29]</sup>. They also need a heat lamp to keep them nice and warm<sup>[30]</sup>. Hope these tips help you<sup>[31]</sup>.

Yours,  
Tarek



# Review on Unit 2

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثانية فى ورقة واحدة

## Vocabulary

appliance	آلة - جهاز	apartment	شقة سكنية
blade	شفرة	break down	يتعطل
motor	محرك	interactive whiteboard	السبورة التفاعلية
vaccine	لقاح	robot	إنسان آلى
power outage	انقطاع التيار الكهربى	humans	البشر
electricity	كهرباء	sharpen	يحد
swap	يتبادل	collar	طوق [حول الرقبة]
battery	بطارية	florist	بائع الزهور

## Language

### 1 The first conditional :

١. الحالة الشرطية الأولى :

► **Uses :** الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about future situations.

• نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لنتحدث عن مواقف مستقبلية.

► **Formation :** التكوين



ex - I will arrive early if the bus comes in time.

### 2 Phrasal verbs :

٢. الأفعال الاصطلاحية :

A phrasal verb is a verb followed by a preposition, such as up, over, in, on, away.

Phrasal verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية	• mop up	• cut out	• pick up
	• hang up	• put out	• tidy up
	• put away	• clean up	

ex. - I will tidy up my room.



# Test 9 | on Unit 2

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

• نصوص الاستماع  
• فى نهاية الكتاب.  
• التقييمات الشهرية  
• فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who were Sameh and Nadine on the school vacation with ?  
.....
2. What was Sameh doing in the living room ?  
.....
3. Why did Sameh put his hand through the hole ?  
.....
4. What did Sameh find in the hole ?  
.....

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

lesson - extension - power - interactive - excited

Mariam is in primary six. While Mariam was at school, there was a [1] ..... cut. The information disappeared from the [2] ..... whiteboard. Miss Amira put the [3] ..... cable into a different socket but it didn't work. Miss Amira couldn't teach the [4] ..... she planned. Miss Amira asked the children to talk about how important electricity is in our lives.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Plants are a very important kind of life. Plants cover most of land. They can be big or small and come in many colors.

Some people like to have plants indoors, not just at their gardens. They think plants can make their homes healthy and look beautiful.

You can buy plants from florists and garden centers. But I prefer to buy them from a garden center as the assistants know how to look after the plants and they can give you some useful advice.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about " ..... ".  
a. health                      b. planes                      c. scientists                      d. plants
2. The underlined word "useful" means " ..... ".  
a. dangerous                      b. quick                      c. helpful                      d. uncomfortable

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do people like to keep some plants indoors ?  
.....
4. Where can we buy plants from ?  
.....

4 The Reader

A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. When Asser opened the car trunk, he saw clean clothes. [ ..... ]
2. Mom and Mayar chose an audiobook to listen. [ ..... ]

B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Who did Asser want to come to the concert with ?  
.....
2. What was Asser worried about ?  
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I think we have to clean ..... the kitchen. It's really messy.  
a. out                      b. down                      c. off                      d. up
2. If Nadia ..... practice well, she won't win the match.  
a. don't                      b. doesn't                      c. isn't                      d. wasn't
3. You have one hour to tidy ..... your bedroom.  
a. in                      b. out                      c. up                      d. away
4. If you touch that wire, you will ..... an electric shock.  
a. getting                      b. get                      c. gets                      d. to get

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. friends – watching – I – with my – like – cartoons.  
.....
2. favorite – appliance – your – What – kitchen – is ?  
.....

7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Caring for your cat

Guiding elements:

- attention
- comfortable
- meals
- furry friend

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



### 1 Listen and answer the questions.

- When did they move into a new apartment ?  
.....
- How is Ali's new room ?  
.....
- Who does Ali share his room with ?  
.....
- What can they do when they finish their homework ?  
.....

(Cairo - Ain shams 2025)

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

attention - appliance - stroke - furry - comfortable

Do you love your cat ? If you say, "Yes", you need to give it lots of [1] ..... to help it feel safe. You should [2] ..... it. This means that you should move your hand over its back, or under its chin. Cats like sleeping in warm, [3] ..... beds. They need to sleep for fifteen hours every day. Don't forget to give them small meals during the day. Milk is bad for them, so don't give them much milk. If you look after your pet, you will have a new [4] ..... friend.

(Alexandria - English Supervision 2025)

### 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I think the blender is the best kitchen appliance! I use it for making milkshakes with my mom. My mom uses it to make **delicious** soups, too. Did you know a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922? He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new invention to make milkshakes. Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist. In 1953, he used a blender to make a vaccine. His vaccine has saved millions of lives. People won't get sick if they have a vaccine. Nowadays, the blender is a little different from the 1920s. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. Some blenders can heat food, too!

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The general idea of the text is about " ..... ".  
a. Kitchens                      b. Smoothie                      c. Blenders                      d. Milkshake
- The underlined word "**delicious**" means tastes .....  
a. good                      b. cold                      c. soft                      d. hot

## B. Answer the following questions.

3. What happens if people have a vaccine ?

4. Who was Jonas Salk ?

(Sharkia - East of Zagazig 2024)

### 4 The Reader

#### A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser wanted his mom and dad to go to the concert.

(Cairo - Al Zaitoun 2025) [ ..... ]

2. Asser found muddy boots in the car.

(Sohag - El-Maraghah 2024) [ ..... ]

#### B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Why did Asser go to the garage ?

(Beheira - Abou Hommos 2025)

2. Who picked up Asser and Mayar from school ?

(Al-Beheira - Bandar Kafr Al-Dawwar 2024)

### 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Please, help me pick ..... the books.

(Aswan - Kom Ombo 2025)

a. on

b. off

c. out

d. up

2. If I ..... milk and strawberries, I'll make a smoothie.

(Beheira - Abo El Matameer 2025)

a. have

b. having

c. had

d. has

3. You will ..... sick if you eat a lot of chocolate.

(Sohag - El-Maragha 2024)

a. be

b. was

c. being

d. are

4. If I see Ahmed, I can ..... him to call you.

(Qena - Doshna 2024)

a. asked

b. asks

c. ask

d. asking

### 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. at - Do - a blender - home - you - have ?

(Alexandria 2025 - West Alexandria 2025)

2. curious - to know - right - I - the - was - answer.

(Cairo - Sahel 2024)

### 7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

#### The chores you and your family do every weekend

##### Guiding elements:

(Cairo - Downtown 2025 / Menoufia - Tala 2024)

• tidy up

• mop up

• hang up

• pick up



# General Revision

## on Units 1 & 2

### I Vocabulary

#### Unit-1

creative	مبدع	messy	فوضوي	shiny	لامع
exhibition	معرض - عرض	disappear	يختفي	metal	معدن
junk modeling	تصميم نماذج باستخدام مواد قديمة	uncomfortable	غير مريح	talented	موهوب
jewelry	مجوهرات	relaxing	مريح	musician	موسيقيار
making a collage	صناعة الأعمال الفنية من الملصقات	cheer	يهتف	actor	ممثل
pottery	صناعة الأواني الفخارية	breath	نفس	award	جائزة
clay	صلصال	flash	وميض	nervous	متوتر
beads	خرز	sculptor	نحات	apron	مريلة
sculpture	فن النحت - تمثال منحوت	reflect	يعكس	kiln	فرن للخزف
animation	رسوم متحركة	pattern	نمط - شكل	audience	جمهور

#### Unit-2

sporty	رياضي	refrigerator	ثلاجة	collar	طوق [حول الرقبة]
cartoons	رسوم متحركة	blender	خلاط	furry	مغطى بالفراء
comic books	كتب مصورة مضحكة	power outage	انقطاع التيار الكهربائي	claws	مخالب
swap	يتبادل	extension cable	وصلة سلك	florist	بائع زهور
chess	لعبة الشطرنج	electricity	كهرباء	fertilizer	سماد
push-up	تمارين الضغط	shocked	مصدوم	vaccination	تطعيم
apartment	شقة سكنية	battery	بطارية	pet	حيوان أليف
appliance	جهاز - آلة	chores	الأعمال المنزلية	curious	فضولي
blade	شفرة	attention	اهتمام - عناية	childhood	طفولة
invention	اختراع	stroke	يلاطف - يداعب	scratch post	عمود خدش
vaccine	لقاح	sharpen	يحد	treatment	علاج

## Unit 1

## Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

► Usage : الاستخدام

نستخدم الحالة الصفرية للتحدث عن حقائق والأشياء الحقيقية بالنسبة لنا :

► Formation : التكوين

Statement  
الجملة الخبرية

→ If / When + present simple , ... present simple / can + inf.

ex. - If / When people have a toothache, they go to the dentist.

If / When + مضارع بسيط , imperative .  
صيغة الامر

ex. - Study hard if you want to succeed.

- If you are sick, go to the doctor.

Wh- Q.  
السؤال بـ [ أداة  
استفهام ]

→ Q.W. + do / does + subj. + inf. + if / when + ... مضارع بسيط ؟

ex. - What do you do if / when you are late for school ?

## Unit 2

## 1 The first conditional : الحالة الشرطية الأولى :

► Usage : الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about future situations.

• نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لتحدث عن مواقف مستقبلية.

► Formation : التكوين

Statement  
الجملة الخبريةIf + present simple tense + subject + will ('ll) / can / may + [inf.]  
إذا / لو زمن المضارع البسيط الفاعل مصدر الفعل  
will not [won't] / can't

ex. - I may buy a new bike if I have enough money.

## 2 Phrasal verbs : الأفعال الاصطلاحية :

Phrasal verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية	• mop up	• put out	• pick up
	• hang up	• clean up	• tidy up
	• put away		

ex. - She cleans up her room once a week.



# Test 11 | on Units 1 & 2

• نصوص الاستماع  
فى نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What animal needs a scratch post ?

2. What is a scratch post ?

3. What do cats like to play with ?

4. What can we write on their collars ?

## 2 AB Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

away - hang - pick - put - mop

**Granddad :** Rasha, let's tidy up the house before your mom gets home.  
I've washed the dishes.

**Rasha :** Ok, Granddad. I'll put [1] ..... the dishes and then I'll clean up the kitchen.

**Granddad :** Good. I'll [2] ..... out the garbage. It's too heavy for you to carry.

**Rasha :** Thanks, Granddad. would you like me to pick up Hesham's toys and put them in his room ?

**Granddad :** Yes, please. Could you [3] ..... up your dad's jacket in the hall cupboard ?

**Rasha :** OK. When we've finished this, I'll [4] ..... up the orange juice from the table.

**Granddad :** Thanks, Rasha.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Yesterday it was raining, so we all stayed at home and cleaned the house. Mom and Dad gave us some chores as a challenge. We all had one hour to do our chores - My brother and I had to tidy up our bedrooms. I had to hang up my clothes, because I sometimes leave them on the chair. My brother had to pick up his books and put them back on the shelf. Dad put out the trash. Mom cleaned up the kitchen and put away the dishes. But then, my little sister tried to mop up the juice from the floor. She spilt her drink, so the floor was very wet ! We all helped to clean it up - just on time !

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The best title for the text is ".....".

a. Weekends      b. A challenge      c. A cold day      d. Our school

2. The underlined word "spilt" means .....

a. drank      b. dropped      c. moved      d. cleaned

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Why did they stay at home yesterday ?

4. What did the brother do alone ?

• **4 The Reader**

**A. Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Mayar found some muddy boots on the seat of the car. [ ..... ]

2. Asser practiced the piano for the school concert. [ ..... ]

**B. Read and answer the questions.**

1. What did Grandma offer to make for Asser and Mayar ?

2. What did Mayar and her mom listen to in the car ?

• **5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. I'll tidy ..... my room tomorrow.

a. up                      b. off                      c. out                      d. away

2. If I have enough time, I ..... visit the museum.

a. would                      b. could                      c. am                      d. will

3. Don't forget to put ..... the garbage, Sami.

a. out                      b. away                      c. up                      d. down

4. If you mix blue and yellow, you ..... green.

a. get                      b. gets                      c. to get                      d. getting

• **6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. does – Anish – What – use – like to – material ?

2. love – books – my friends – I – comic – swapping – with.

• **7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

**An amazing appliance**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**Guiding elements:**

• blender

• blade

• motor

• invention

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

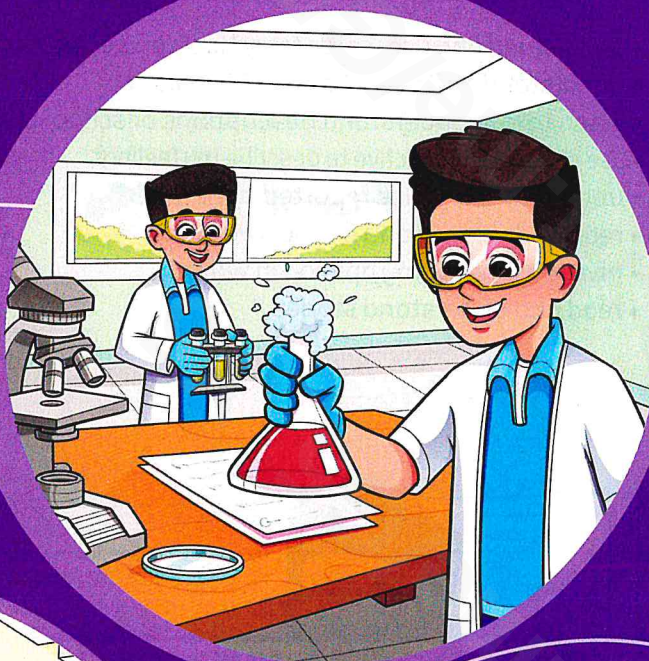
.....



**THEME**

**2**

**Myself and others**





# UNIT 3

## School time!

### وقت الدراسة !

#### Aims of Unit Three :

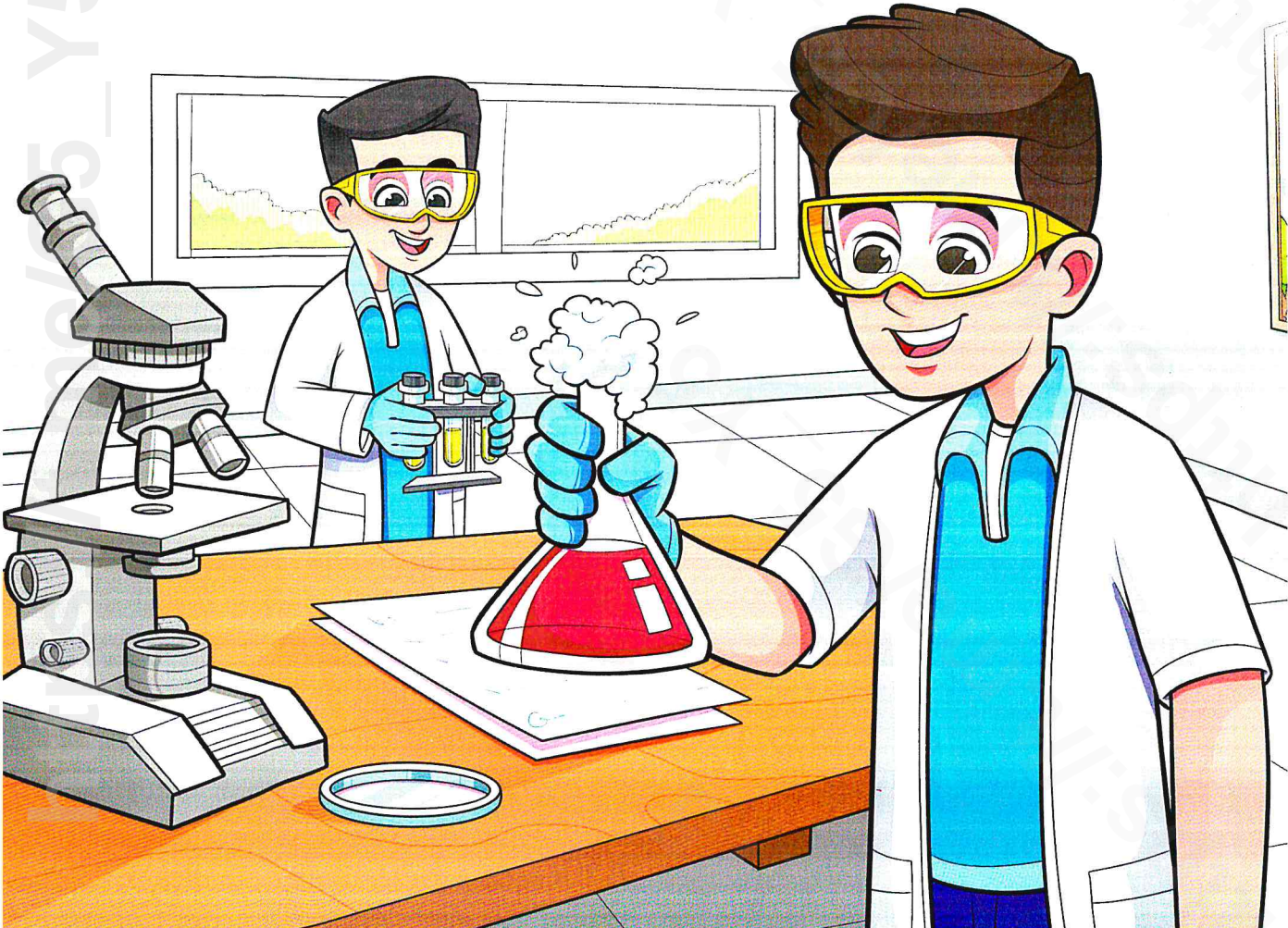
##### In this unit I will ...

- read and understand an article about different kinds of classrooms.
- understand and use words for schools and education.
- understand and use adverbs of frequency.
- listen to and understand descriptions of school clubs.
- use make me + adjective to describe my feelings.
- understand and use reported speech.
- read and understand a brochure.
- give reasons for my opinion in writing.
- read and understand stories.

#### الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثالثة :

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- أقرأ وأفهم مقال عن أنواع مختلفة من الفصول الدراسية.
- أفهم وأستخدم كلمات عن المدارس والتعليم.
- أفهم وأستخدم ظروف التكرار.
- أستمع وأفهم وصف عن النوادي المدرسية.
- أستخدم صيغة "make me" يليها الصفة لوصف مشاعري.
- أفهم وأستخدم الكلام الغير مباشر.
- أقرأ وأفهم كتيب.
- أقدم أسباب لرأبي كتابيا.
- أقرأ وأفهم قصص.







## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

green roofs	أسقف خضراء	boarding school	مدرسة داخلية
nomadic	بدوى	neat	أنيق - مرتب
sleds	زلجات	nomadic school	مدرسة بدوية
mobile	مُتَنَقِّل	timetable	جدول مواعيد
cycle	يركب دراجة	flexible	مرن
school uniform	زى مدرسى موحد	nature	الطبيعة
reindeer	الرنة [نوع من فصيلة الغزلان]	cafeteria	كافتيريا

## • Extra vocabulary

middle school	grade	صف / مرحلة	rainy	ممطر
المدرسة الإعدادية	boat	قارب	schedule	جدول زمني
across	education	تعليم	topic	موضوع
خلال / عبر	traditional	تقليدي	allow	يسمح
underground	computing	استعمال الحاسبات	rooftop	سقف المنزل
تحت الأرض	culture	ثقافة	floods	فيضانات
school project	Bangladesh	بنجلاديش [دولة في جنوب آسيا]	bookcase	خزانة كتب
مشروع مدرسى			solar panels	الواح شمسية
Siberia	ICT [Information and Communication Technology]			
سيبيريا [منطقة في روسيا]				تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات
shade				
ظل				
calm				
هادئ				
tent				
خيمة				
kindergarten				
روضة أطفال				

## • Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten

## • Did you know ?

- There are 787 million children in the world who are old enough to go to elementary school. That's a lot of classes!  
• هناك ٧٨٧ مليون طفل في العالم قد وصلوا لسن دخول المدرسة الابتدائية. هذا يعني الكثير من الفصول الدراسية!

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
mobile	can move
flexible	can change easily
timetable	a schedule with the times of all your school classes on it
boarding school	a school where children live and only go home at vacation times
subject	a topic that you study at school, for example, math, English, history, science
ICT	- a subject where you study and use computers - a subject to teach you computer skills
neat	clean and tidy, not messy or dirty
school uniform	- clothes that are the same for every student - special clothes which students wear to school
cafeteria	a place at school where students can eat lunch

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the same time	في نفس الوقت	go on school trips	يذهب في رحلات مدرسية
on the roof of ...	على سطح ...	get the subway	يستقل مترو الأنفاق
on the top of	على قمة	on a boat	على متن قارب
travel around	يتجول	make electricity	يولد كهرباء
pick up	يحمل ركاب	take the bus	يستقل الاتوبيس
do more writing	يقوم بالمزيد من الكتابة	have to + inf.	يجب أن + [مصدر الفعل]



**Pop Quiz**

**on vocabulary**

**تدريب تلقائي**

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية



► **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

- They like going to parks and enjoy the beautiful ..... there.  
a. nature                      b. technology                      c. videogames                      d. floods
- I'm sure he'll change his opinion after we talk. He is .....  
a. nomadic                      b. flexible                      c. calm                      d. neat
- A ..... is a topic that you study at school.

[التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر - الجيزة - الشيخ زايد]

- a. desk                      b. board                      c. subject                      d. classroom



5. A schedule with the times of all your school classes on it is called a .....  
 a. mobile                      b. timetable                      c. vacation                      d. lesson  
 [التقويمات الشهرية - نوفمبر - البحيرة - دمنهور]
6. We can sit and sleep in a ..... when we're in the desert.  
 a. tent                      b. boat                      c. ship                      d. snowy land
7. A ..... is a place at school where students eat lunch.  
 a. playground                      b. cafeteria                      c. library                      d. theater
8. When something is clean and tidy, it's .....  
 a. messy                      b. dirty                      c. neat                      d. ugly
9. ICT is the subject to teach you ..... skills.  
 a. notebook                      b. computer                      c. pen                      d. pencil
10. A school ..... is the special clothes which students wear at school.  
 a. subject                      b. room                      c. uniform                      d. playground
11. Walk in the ..... when it is very sunny.  
 a. water                      b. sun                      c. wind                      d. shade
12. They travel on ..... when there is a lot of snow and ice.  
 a. tents                      b. sleds                      c. boats                      d. plants

## II Listening and Reading

### 1. Main points on listening and reading texts      نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Classrooms on the roof	lessons - roof	In Egypt, some students have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school.
	design - gardens	The Shagara at school project designs gardens and green roofs for schools.
	gardens - top	Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building.
	nature - city	Green roofs bring nature into the city.
	clean - air	Green roofs clean and cool the air in the city.
	teaches - plant	The project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden.
	calm - learning	Green outdoors places make us calm and healthy which is great for learning.

Nomadic school	lessons - tents	Some students have their lessons in tents on the ice and snow in Northern Siberia.
	nomadic	Many people in the North of Siberia are nomadic.
	live - one place	Nomadic people don't live in one place.
	sleds - frozen	They travel in sleds across the frozen land and sleep in tents.
	look - reindeer	They look after reindeer.
	classroom - tent	The classrooms are tents on the ice, or mobile rooms on wheels at the nomadic school.
	timetable - flexible	The timetable is flexible at the nomadic school.
How does Lilly go to school ?	school - travel	Nomadic school travels with the families.
	middle	My name is Lilly and I go to middle school.
	kindergarten	I started kindergarten when I was six.
	ICT	I like using computers.
	uniform	I don't have to wear a school uniform.
	neat	My clothes and my shoes have to be neat.
	get - bus	I sometimes get the bus.
	cafeteria	I eat lunch at the school cafeteria.

## 2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

### Lesson 1

#### Classrooms of the world

Classrooms are not the same in every school. Here are two places where classrooms are a little different.

#### Classrooms on the roof!

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school!

The Shagara at School project designs gardens and green roofs for schools in Egypt.

Green roofs are gardens on the top of a **building**<sup>[1]</sup>. They bring **nature**<sup>[2]</sup> into the city.

#### Pop Quiz

- ترجمة النصوص
- في نهاية الكتاب.
- تدرب على
- من قطع الفهم
- ونصوص الاستماع



A roof garden in a city

[2] طبيعة

[1] مبنى



They also clean and cool the air. That means that they are great for the environment.

The project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden. They learn about which plants grow well in the hot, dry weather.

In 2017, classes at one school started going to their green roofs for lessons. People at the project thought this was an amazing idea!

In 2019, they built their first classroom on the roof. The desks are in the **shade**<sup>[3]</sup>, but there are no walls. Students and teachers have space and can see the flowers and plants.

The Shagara at School Project says roof gardens can help students in many city schools. Green outdoor places make us calm and healthy - and that is great for learning.

### Classrooms on the move!

In Northern Siberia, some students have their lessons in **tents**<sup>[4]</sup> on the ice and snow! Many people in the North of Siberia are **nomadic**<sup>[5]</sup>. This means that they don't live in one place. They travel in sleds across the frozen land and sleep in tents. They look after **reindeer**<sup>[6]</sup> and take them to where there is food.

So, how do their children get an **education**<sup>[7]</sup> ?

There are two ways. First, some children go away to **boarding school**<sup>[8]</sup>. These children are away from their families for many months every year. They can't learn **traditional skills**<sup>[9]</sup> from their parents, and they often forget their culture's language.

The second way is nomadic school. This is a school which travels with the families. The classrooms are tents on the ice, or **mobile**<sup>[10]</sup> rooms on wheels.

The children study school subjects like math, science, and computing. However, they also study their own language and traditional skills. The timetable is **flexible**<sup>[11]</sup>, so they can help their families with the chores.

At nomadic school, the children are happy because they can stay with their families and get a good education. They learn everything about how to live in their snowy land!

[3] ظل

[4] خيمة

[5] بدو

[6] حيوان الرنة

[7] تعليم

[8] مدرسة داخلية

[9] مهارات تقليدية

[10] متنقل

[11] مرن



Nomadic children help to look after reindeer

## Lesson 2

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

### How does Lilly go to school ?

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in Kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm eleven, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school. In Kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always lots of toys in the classroom. We do more writing now in Grade 6, and we do more interesting subjects, like ICT. I like using computers!



Lilly, USA

We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school uniform, but my clothes and shoes have to be neat. School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the cafeteria, or outside in summer.

### III Language

#### Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

●●●●●  
always

●●●○  
usually

●●○○○  
often

●○○○○  
sometimes

○○○○○  
never

#### ► Usage : الاستخدام

- We can use **adverbs of frequency** with the present simple to say **how often** something happens.

يمكننا أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط لتحديد عدد مرات تكرار حدوث شيء ما.

- They can help to describe habits or routines.

يمكن أن تساعد ظروف التكرار في وصف العادات أو الأعمال الروتينية.

- Adverbs of frequency come before most verbs, but they come after verb to be.

تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل معظم الأفعال ولكن تأتي بعد "verb to be" في الجملة.

ex. I **am never** late for school. - She **often walks** to school.





## Pop Quiz

## on Language

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. It ..... rains in August. It's always sunny. (Gharbia - Tanta 2025)  
a. usually      b. never      c. sometimes      d. often
2. He ..... walks to school. He takes the bus.  
a. never      b. always      c. sometimes      d. usually
3. He ..... late for school.  
a. were always      b. is always      c. always are      d. always is
4. It's ..... sunny and hot in July.  
a. sometimes      b. never      c. always      d. often
5. **SB** I ..... wear my school uniform. It's a school rule.  
a. always      b. never      c. sometimes      d. often
6. We ..... to the club on Monday.  
a. go sometimes      b. never goes      c. sometimes go      d. goes never
7. She studies very hard, so she ..... gets a good grade.  
a. always      b. sometimes      c. never      d. doesn't
8. They do sport five times a week. They ..... do sport.  
a. never      b. sometimes      c. usually      d. always
9. He always arrives on time. He is ..... late.  
a. usually      b. always      c. never      d. often
10. I ..... drink coffee at night. That's unhealthy. (Alexandria - Montaza 2025)  
a. usually      b. sometimes      c. never      d. always
11. Dad ..... a book and watches a match in the evening.  
a. reads sometimes      b. read always  
c. sometimes reads      d. always read
12. **SB** I don't have a bike, so I ..... cycle to school.  
a. sometimes      b. always      c. never      d. usually

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. We ..... [always] go to school on Fridays. [التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر - المنوفية - بركة السبع]
2. **AB** My brother's bedroom ..... [sometimes is] messy.
3. He has ..... [sometimes] eaten mushrooms.
4. We ..... [sometimes] talk on the phone at the classroom. It's a school rule.
5. We ..... [always be] at school on time.
6. Mom ..... [makes sometimes] cookies for breakfast.
7. You can visit the library any time. It is ..... [never] open.



# Test 12 | on Lessons 1 & 2

• نصوص الاستماع  
في نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل (تدريبات القصة في اختبار الوحدة)

## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Where do students in Northern Siberia have their lessons ?  
.....
2. Who don't live in one place ?  
.....
3. How do nomadic people travel ?  
.....
4. Who do they look after ?  
.....

## 2 Read and complete the text / dialogue with words from the box.

A

subjects – grade – kindergarten – toys – play

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA.  
I started [1] ..... when I was four. Now I'm 11, and I'm in [2] .....  
6. I love my school. In kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always  
lots of [3] ..... in the classroom. We do more writing now in Grade 6,  
and we have many interesting [4] ..... , like ICT. I like using computers!

B

(Minia - Bani Mazar 2025)

cleans – school – roof – tower – environment

**Ghada:** Did you read the new poster on the school wall ?

**Rabab:** No, Ghada. What's it about ?

**Ghada:** It's about the green [1] ..... at school.

**Rabab:** What's the green roof ?

**Ghada:** It's a garden on the top of the [2] ..... building.

**Rabab:** Why are they making it at school ?

**Ghada:** It is very good for the [3] ..... .

**Rabab:** How is it good for the environment ?

**Ghada:** It [4] ..... and cools the air.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Schools around the world want to do the same thing - to give children a good education. In some countries, children start elementary school at seven years old. In other countries, the children are younger.

In other countries in Africa, for example, Kenya, some people have a nomadic culture, where they move from place to place. This means their teacher has to be flexible with the timetable. The teacher chooses subjects which are the most important at different times.



**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The opposite of the underlined word "start" is .....  
a. move                      b. find                      c. hang                      d. finish
2. Kenya is a country in .....  
a. Africa                      b. Asia                      c. Australia                      d. America

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What is the importance of schools for children ?  
.....
4. How is the school timetable in nomadic areas ? (Kafr El-Sheikh - English supervision 2025)  
.....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. We ..... go to the park on Saturdays. It's really near.  
a. doesn't                      b. always                      c. never                      d. don't
2. They ..... the bus to school when it is cold outside.  
a. sometimes take                      b. never takes                      c. take never                      d. take always
3. He ..... watches action films. He doesn't like them.  
a. always                      b. usually                      c. never                      d. often
4. He ..... does exercises in the morning. It's his daily habit.  
a. never                      b. sometimes                      c. always                      d. ever

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. roofs - Green - of a building - are - the top - gardens - on.  
.....
2. go - school - How - he - to - does ?  
..... (Qalyoubia - English supervision 2025)

**6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**"Your school week"**

**Guiding elements:**

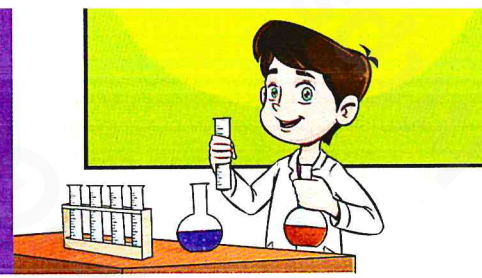
- How do you go to school ?
- When does your school start ?
- What do you do at break ?
- What subjects do you like ?

.....

.....

.....

(Menufia - Tala 2025)



## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

tournament	دورة رياضية [بطولة]	passionate	شغوف / متحمس
principal	مدير المدرسة	Eco-playground	ملعب صديق للبيئة
demonstration	إيضاح / عرض	open day	يوم مفتوح

## • School clubs

cooking club	نادي الطهي	art club	نادي التربية الفنية
photography club	نادي التصوير الفوتوغرافي	drama club	نادي دراما / الأدب المسرحي
football club	نادي كرة القدم	swimming club	نادي السباحة
music club	نادي الموسيقى		

## • Extra vocabulary

compare	يقارن	recipe book	كتاب طبخ	terrific	رائع - ممتاز
proud	فخور	race	سباق	chance	فرصة
bike shed	مظلة للدراجات	encourage	يشجع	persuade	يقنع
harm	يؤذي	frame	إطار / سور	a car park	ساحة وقوف السيارات
sort	يصنف	nature trail	ممر طبيعي	tour	جولة
relaxed	مسترخي	green spaces	مساحات خضراء	green	صديق للبيئة
solar panels	ألواح شمسية	presentation	عرض تقديمي	act	يمثل

## • Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
shoot يرمى - يُصوّب	shot	shot
meet يقابل	met	met
grow يزرع	grew	grown
find out يكتشف	found out	found out



• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
passionate	having strong feelings
principal	the person in charge of a school
demonstration	when you show other people how to do or make something
encourage	persuade someone to do something by giving them advice or support
Eco-playground	a playground that does not harm the environment

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

head to	يتجه إلى	in charge of	مسئول عن
shoot goals	يُصوّب / يسدد أهداف	have a concert for	يقيم حفل موسيقى لـ
join in tournaments	ينضم إلى مباريات الدوري	join in friendly matches	
for the first half hour			يشارك في مباريات ودية
	لمدة النصف ساعة الاولى	take place	يحدث
run up and down	يجري ذهاباً وإياباً	learn a new skill	يتعلم مهارة جديدة
climb a rope	يتسلق الحبل		



**Pop Quiz**

**on Vocabulary**

**تدريب تلقائي**

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية



► **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. A/An ..... is a playground that does not harm the environment.

a. solar panels

b. street

c. stony playground

d. Eco-playground

2. Listening to music makes me ..... I feel calm.

a. unhappy

b. relaxed

c. unhealthy

d. hungry

3. I learn to draw and paint in ..... club.

a. art

b. science

c. math

d. Arabic

4. Nadia goes to ..... club where they sing songs.  
 a. art                      b. math                      c. music                      d. science
5. We make nice meals in the ..... club.  
 a. music                      b. cooking                      c. drama                      d. art
6. We learn plays and ..... them in the drama club.  
 a. act                      b. cut                      c. color                      d. draw
7. They use ..... panels to make electricity.  
 a. petrol                      b. gas                      c. solar                      d. oil
8. .... is the person in charge of a school.  
 (التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر - البحيرة - التحرير)  
 a. Principal                      b. Plumber                      c. Partner                      d. Painter
9. My teacher gave me a second ..... to do the project.  
 a. roof                      b. chance                      c. frame                      d. park

## II Listening and Reading

### 1. Main points on listening and reading texts      نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

#### Lesson 3

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
School clubs	practice	Today, we practiced inside for the first half hour.
	up and down	We had to run up and down the playground.
	climb – rope	We climbed a rope.
	race	We ran a 400-meter race.
	a walk	Our club went for a walk in the park.
	compare	We compared our photos.
	instruments	They sing songs and play many instruments.
	competitions	He sometimes does competitions.
	drama club	Nader enjoys going to a drama club.
	costumes	They make special costumes for actors to wear.



## Lesson 4

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Green City School Open Day	passionate	At Green City School, we are passionate about helping the environment.
	families	New students and their families are welcomed to join our Open Day.
	solar panels	We use solar panels to make electricity.
	recycle	We recycle a lot of paper and plastic.
	Eco-playground	In our Eco-playground the climbing frame is made with recycled materials.
	principal	Parents watch a presentation made by the principal.
	nature trail	There's also a nature trail around the playground in the Green City School.

### 2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب


## Lesson 3

### Art Club! **SB**

Everyone knows that art is good for your **mind**<sup>[1]</sup>. It makes you **relaxed**<sup>[2]</sup> and happy. Come to the art room at 1 pm on Tuesdays to learn to draw and paint.



### Tennis is terrific <sup>[3]</sup>! **SB**

 Tennis is a great sport. It makes you healthy and happy! We have classes every Wednesday at 4 pm. **Join**<sup>[4]</sup> our club to learn a new **skill**<sup>[5]</sup> and meet new people!



[1] عقل

[2] مسترخى

[3] رائع

[4] انضم

[5] مهارة

Today we practiced inside for the first half hour. First, we had to run up and down the playground 20 times. Then we climbed a rope. That was really difficult. After that, we ran a 400-meter race outside. I love running but it makes me very tired. After that, we played a game for 15 minutes. It was great. My team won!

### Sports club

Last week, our club went for a walk in the park. When our teacher pointed to an object, we took a photograph of it but we could only take one photo! So, we had to look carefully and decide where to stand. It was fun and it made me excited about the subject. When we compared our photos later, they were really different!

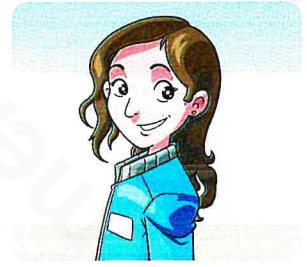
### Photography club

Nadia goes to music club where they sing songs and play instruments. They learn songs from all over the world. At the end of term, they have a concert for their parents.

Samer goes to cooking club. Every week, they make a meal from a different country. They take photos of their meals for a special recipe book. They can take the food home to eat with their families.

Malek goes to swimming club three times a week. It makes him healthy and strong. He sometimes does competitions, too.

Nader enjoys going to drama club. They learn plays and they act them for their parents. Sometimes they make special costumes for the actors to wear.



## Lesson 4

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

### Green City School Open Day

At Green City School, we are passionate about helping the environment. Come and find out why we are the greenest school in the city!

New students and their families are welcome to join us for our Open Day on 25<sup>th</sup> May.

Open day schedule :

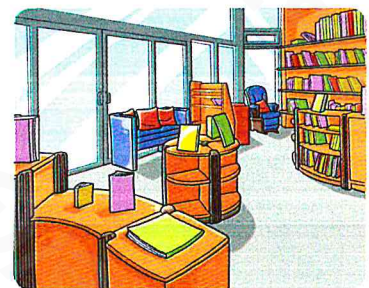
**9 am** New students and families arrive at the school  
Presentation by the principal

**10 am** Tour of the school buildings

First, see our new Green Library. Why is it green? Because all its electricity comes from solar panels on the roof

Then, we head to the Recycling Room. This is where we can recycle paper, plastic, and other materials. Watch a demonstration about how we sort the waste from our classrooms

After that, come and see our Eco-playground.



Our Green Library



The climbing frame is made mostly with recycled materials. There is also a nature trail around the playground, where we can learn about plants, animals, and insects

**12 pm** Enjoy a delicious lunch in our School Garden, where we grow our own flowers, fruit, and vegetables

**1 pm** Any questions ? This is your chance to ask the Green School students and teachers!  
There is a small car park, but we encourage you to walk, cycle, or come by bus!



Our Eco-playground

### III Language

#### Using **make me + adj.** صفة

##### ► Formation : التكوين

**Subject + make(s) + object** مفعول + **adjective** صفة

**ex.** - I have some friends. → - I'm happy.  
= My friends **make me** happy.

##### ► Usage : الاستخدام

1. Use **make(s)** me to talk about how you feel because of something or someone.  
استخدم [ **make me** ] للحديث عن شعورك بسبب شيء ما أو شخص ما.
2. You can also use **make me** with a verb to talk about how you feel because of an activity.

٢. يمكن أن تستخدم [ **make me** ] مع الفعل للحديث عن شعورك بسبب نشاط ما.

**ex.** - Watching cartoons **makes me feel** excited.

##### Note :

- Use the [ **verb + -ing** ] as the subject of the sentence.  
استخدم [ **verb + -ing** ] كفاعل للجملة.
- ex.** - I run. → I get healthy. = **Running makes me feel** healthy.  
- I play tennis. → I get healthy.  
= **Playing tennis makes me feel** healthy.
- The object can be a noun or a pronoun.
- لاحظ أن : يمكن أن يكون المفعول في الجملة اسم [شخص، شيء، ...] أو ضمير «ضمير مفعول».

**ex.** - I help **Hani** at school = I help **him** at school.

↓ object [noun]

↓ object [pronoun]

## • Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول

Subject pronoun ضمائر الفاعل	I	he	she	it	you	we	they
object pronoun ضمائر المفعول	me	him	her	it	you	us	them



### Pop Quiz

### on Language

#### 1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- Cooking club always makes ..... hungry. (Beheira - Abo Hommos 2025)  
a. I                      b. my                      c. me                      d. myself
- Our friend, Hazem ..... us laugh.  
a. to make              b. make                      c. making              d. makes
- Stories ..... children think and imagine.  
a. to make              b. makes                      c. make                      d. making
- The traffic always ..... us late.  
a. makes                      b. make                      c. making                      d. to make
- Tennis is a great sport. It makes ..... healthy .  
a. I                      b. you                      c. he                      d. she
- My brother ..... me angry when he makes noise.  
a. make                      b. making                      c. made                      d. makes
- He tries to make the poor people .....  
a. happy                      b. happiness                      c. happily                      d. happiest
- ..... much tea makes me sick.  
a. Drink                      b. Drinking                      c. Drinks                      d. Drink to
- A: Your present makes me ..... happy. B: Thank you.  
a. felt                      b. feel                      c. feeling                      d. feels
- Our teacher makes us ..... extra homework when we're late.  
a. do                      b. does                      c. did                      d. doing

#### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- ..... [Stay] in a boarding school makes her feel lonely.
- Green areas ..... [makes] my children happy.
- Traveling for a long time makes ..... [they] feel tired.
- Studying math ..... [make] us feel excited.
- Dad always makes ..... [I] proud.
- A nice book cover makes us ..... [interesting].





# Test 13 | on Lessons 3&4

• نصوص الاستماع  
فى نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة فى اختبار الوحدة]

## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What does Hana love ?  
.....
2. What club did Hana start ?  
.....
3. What does Hana think about cooking ?  
.....
4. What did they make for Eid Al-Fitr ?  
.....

(Kafir El-Sheikh – English Supervision 2025)

## 2 Read and complete the text/dialogue with words from the box :

A

concert - swimming - competitions - recipe - meal

Samer goes to a cooking club. Every week, they make a [1] ..... from a different country. They take photos of their meals for a special [2] ..... book. They can take the food home to eat with their families. Malek goes to a [3] ..... club three times a week. It makes him healthy and strong. He sometimes does [4] ..... , too.

(Sharqia - Hihia 2024)

B

swimming - favorite - mind - relaxed - art

**Mr Adnan:** Hello. I'm your new activity teacher.

**Mando :** Welcome Mr Adnan.

**Mr Adnan:** I need you to tell me about your [1] ..... club.

**Mando :** I like [2] ..... club.

**Mr Adnan:** Why do you like art club ?

**Mando :** Because art is good for my [3] ..... .

**Mr Adnan:** How does it make you feel ?

**Mando :** Art makes me happy and [4] ..... .

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Mustafa likes sports. He goes to a sports club every weekend. He likes playing football. Football is the most famous sport in the world. Mustafa always plays football with his friends. Playing football makes him healthy and fit. He also loves watching football games on TV. His favorite team is Liverpool. His favorite football player is Mohamed Salah. He is the best football player in the world. Mustafa wants to be like Mohamed Salah when he grows up. His friend Asser likes football, but he is good at tennis. He always plays tennis every weekend. In summer Mustafa and Asser go to Alexandria to spend their summer holiday with their families.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The opposite of the underlined word "fit" is .....  
a. healthy                      b. strong                      c. weak                      d. bored
2. Mustafa likes .....  
a. music                      b. sports                      c. art                      d. history

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Where does Mustafa play football ?  
.....
4. Who does Mustafa want to be like when he grows up ?  
.....

(Minya – Dermwas 2024)

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Helping mom in the kitchen ..... me proud. (Luxor – English supervision 2025)  
a. make                      b. makes                      c. making                      d. to make
2. .... my friends at school makes me happy.  
a. Meeting                      b. Meet                      c. Meets                      d. To meet
3. Climbing high mountains makes ..... feel nervous.  
a. them                      b. they                      c. their                      d. theirs
4. How does learning a new skill make you ..... ?  
a. feeling                      b. feels                      c. feel                      d. to feel

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. tennis – happy – and – Playing – him – healthy – makes.  
.....
2. would – to – club – like to – Which – you – go ?  
.....

**6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**"Green City School"**

**Guiding elements :**

- environment                      • solar panels                      • recycle                      • sorting waste

.....

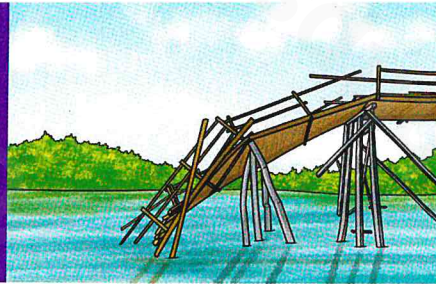
.....

.....

.....



- Language
- Writing an opinion
- Story : The doctor comes to school



## I Vocabulary

### • Key vocabulary

bridge	جسر - كوبري	tablet	لوح	repair = fix	يصلح
collapse	ينهار - يسقط	sports center	مركز للألعاب الرياضية	journey	رحلة طويلة
steep	شديد الانحدار	square	ميدان - ساحة	crash	تحطم - اصطدام
society	مجتمع	scream	يصرخ / صرخة	scripts	مخطوطات
experiences	خبرات حياتية	scribe	كاتب	poisonous	سام
palace	قصر	papyrus	ورق البردي	sore	ملتهب
court	محكمة				

### • Extra vocabulary

awake	مستيقظ	roll	لفة	last	يستمر - يدوم
eventually	أخيرًا	broken	محطم	mistakes	أخطاء
in addition	بالإضافة إلى ذلك	hill	تل	repeat	يكرر - يردد
continue	يستمر	politician	سياسي	develop	يُطوّر
real life	الحياة الواقعية	herbs	أعشاب	teamwork	عمل جماعي
Pharaoh	فرعون	advice	نصيحة	reeds	قصب - خيزران
confused	متحير - مرتبك	earthquake	زلزال	conclusion	خاتمة
introduction	مقدمة	main ideas	أفكار رئيسية		

### • Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
come up تطلع - تشرق	came up	come up
take يستغرق - يأخذ	took	taken
break يكسر	broke	broken
bite يعض	bit	bitten
shake يهز	shook	shaken
hurt يؤذي / يؤلم	hurt	hurt

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
steep	something which is difficult to climb
journey	the act of traveling from one place to another
repair	when you fix something
collapse	when something falls down suddenly
tablet	In schools in Ancient Egypt, young children wrote on this
papyrus	a type of paper made from plants called reeds
scribe	a person who wrote about everything that happened in the pharaoh's court
court	a place where the pharaoh made important decisions
herbs	plants that people used in food or medicine
script	a piece of paper with information written on it

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

lay awake	يستلقي مستيقظاً	for a while	لفترة / لبعض الوقت
late for	متأخر عن	yours faithfully	تفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام
walk up the hill	يصعد التل	first of all	في البداية / أولاً
arrive at	يصل إلى [مكان صغير]	To sum up	وخلاصة القول
give an opinion	يعطى رأى	pack up	يحزم [امتنعة]
give reasons for	يعطى مبررات لـ	make decisions	يتخذ قرارات
give a summary of	يعطى ملخص لـ	grow up	ينضج
pour ... onto	يصب ... على		



**Pop Quiz**

**on vocabulary**

**تدريب تلقائي**

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية



► **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. When we travel to get to a place, we go on a .....

- a. river                      b. journey                      c. lake                      d. picnic

(التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر - الجيزة - 6 أكتوبر)

2. If something ....., it falls down suddenly.

- a. crosses                      b. collapses                      c. moves                      d. builds

3. He got sick after the ..... snake bit him.

- a. cute                      b. safe                      c. poisonous                      d. small



4. The engineers build a ..... to cross the river.  
a. tower                      b. beach                      c. bridge                      d. house
5. The king and the queen live in a .....  
a. palace                      b. farm                      c. wall                      d. bridge
6. The doctor asked me to ..... the medicine bottle before drinking it.  
a. wash                      b. shake                      c. throw                      d. break
7. This mountain is difficult to climb. It's .....  
a. near                      b. steep                      c. small                      d. low  
(التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر - البحيرة - دمنهور)
8. To fix a broken toy is to ..... it.  
a. repair                      b. cut                      c. damage                      d. destroy
9. A ..... is a person who wrote about daily life in Ancient Egypt.  
a. doctor                      b. nurse                      c. pharaoh                      d. scribe
10. In ancient Egypt, children wrote on wooden .....  
a. trees                      b. tablets                      c. glass                      d. bowl
11. We can grow ..... to eat or to make into medicine.  
a. herbs                      b. papyrus                      c. planets                      d. planes
12. A ..... is a piece of paper with information written on it.  
a. herb                      b. court                      c. script                      d. playground

## II Listening and Reading

### 1. Main points on listening and reading texts      نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

#### Lesson 6

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Are school trips important ?	experience	School trips are exciting learning experiences.
	project	We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.
	sum up	To sum up, school trips are very important.
	education	School trips are a very important part of our education.
Learning about history	create - present	Past events have created the present.
	first of all	First of all, we can learn a lot by studying the past.
	society - cultures	History helps us understand our society and other cultures.
	learn - past	History helps us learn about past governments.
	in addition	In addition, we learn how and why life has changed.
	repeat	We don't repeat the same mistakes.

## Lesson 5

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

## The bridge to school

Lina lay awake, listening to the wind and rain. The **storm**<sup>[1]</sup> lasted all night. Then, as the sun came up, she heard a **crash**<sup>[2]</sup>. She ran to the window.

"What was that?" asked her sister, Sarah.

Lina looked at the river near their house. "Oh no!" she said. "The bridge has **collapsed**<sup>[3]</sup>!"

The village where Lina and Sarah lived was small, and had **steep**<sup>[4]</sup> mountains all around it. The bridge over the river was the quickest way to get to the town, with the school, stores, doctors, and sports center.

They ran to the kitchen to see their parents.

"I've just listened to the radio," said Mom. "They said that the storm would stop soon. Then we can see what has happened."

Eventually, the rain stopped, and Lina and her family walked to the river. Other people were there too.

Lina's dad pointed to the broken bridge. He said that they couldn't go to town, or the school.

"What are we going to do?" asked Lina.

They had to stay at home that day, and their teacher sent work for them to do online.

The next morning, a school bus drove into the village **square**<sup>[5]</sup>.

"Look, Lina," said Sarah. "The bus is here!"

"The bus?" said Lina. "But it's such a long way by road!"

"I know, but it's the only thing we can do," said Sarah, picking up her bag and running to the door.

As Lina got on the bus, she looked at the bridge. Seeing it broken made her sad. Their life would be different until someone repaired it. She enjoyed going across it in the mornings, and walking up the hill on the other side. She was often the first to arrive at school. Now she would be late!

The bus journey took two hours. It was hot, and the traffic moved slowly. Lina was sleepy and sad.

At school, Lina asked to use the computer. She wrote a letter about the storm and the broken bridge. When she got home, she took photos.

Her teacher said that writing a letter for everyone to see was a great idea, because everybody should know about the bridge and try to help. She



The bridge after the storm

[1] عاصفة

[2] تحطم

[3] سقط

[4] شديد الانحدار

[5] ميدان



helped Lina send the **letter**<sup>[6]</sup> and photos to **newspapers**<sup>[7]</sup> and websites all over the country.

The next day, Lina and her friends took the bus to school. To their surprise, when they came home, they saw engineers and builders at the river. They smiled at the children.

"We heard about your letter!" said a man in a yellow coat. "We're building a new bridge, so you can get to school quickly."

After a week, there was a new **metal**<sup>[8]</sup> bridge. "Well done, Lina," said Sarah. "Your letter helped everybody!"

خطاب [6]

جريدة [7]

معدنى [8]

## Lesson 6

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

### Are school trips important ? by Nesma, aged 12

In my opinion, school trips are exciting learning experiences.

First of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better. In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.



Schoolchildren at the Egyptian Museum, Cairo

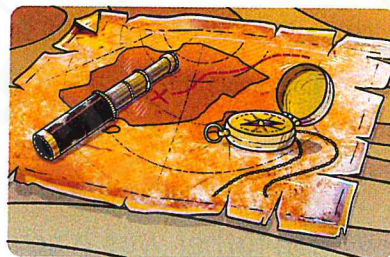
To sum up, school trips are a very important part of our education. I think we should try to go on one school trip every year.

### Is studying the past important ?

AB

I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present. In my opinion, it is important that we understand how past events have created the present.

First of all, we can learn a lot by studying the past. History helps us understand our society and other cultures because we learn about life in the past, important artists, scientists, and politicians. In addition, we learn about how and why life has changed over the years.



Some people say that the present is more interesting than the past, but I don't agree. History is interesting and exciting because it is full of great stories and interesting people. Finally, history helps us learn from past mistakes so that we don't repeat the same mistakes in the future.

In conclusion, I think that studying history is an important part of our education. History helps us learn from the past and it helps us understand why and how things change.

## Lesson 7

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

### The doctor comes to school

Nebsin didn't want to get up. The sun was bright, but his bed was **comfortable**<sup>[1]</sup>.

"Nebsin!" Dad called. "Time for school!"

Nebsin went into the kitchen. His mom was making breakfast, and his brother was playing.

"Why do I have to go to school?" he said.

"Babu plays all day. His life is easy!"

"Babu will start school next year, when he is seven," said his mom.

"I'm going to the **palace**<sup>[2]</sup>, Nebsin," said Dad. "Let's walk together."

They left the house. His father was a **scribe**<sup>[3]</sup>, who spent all day writing about everything that happened in the **pharaoh's court**<sup>[4]</sup>.

"Did you like school, Dad?" asked Nebsin.

"Of course! I wanted to learn to read and write, like you are doing."

"Why did you want to be a scribe?"

"My father was a scribe, and his father was a scribe.

It's an important job. You will know what you want to be one day."

Nebsin was **confused**<sup>[5]</sup>. He didn't know yet what job he wanted to do in the future.



[1] مريح

[2] قصر

[3] كاتب

[4] محكمة الفرعون



Later that morning, Nebsin was sitting on the floor, listening to the teacher and writing on his **wooden tablet**<sup>[6]</sup>. Suddenly, a boy jumped up and started shouting. The teacher was shocked.

"Sit down!" he said.

"There's a snake!" somebody shouted. Everyone looked. A small, brown snake was moving across the classroom floor. The boy tried to push the snake away, but it **bit**<sup>[7]</sup> his hand and he **screamed**<sup>[8]</sup>.

"Quick, Nebsin!" the teacher said. "Get the doctor. She'll know what to do."

Nebsin and another boy ran to the doctor's building. She was sitting at a desk with rolls of **papyrus**<sup>[9]</sup> on it. When they ran in, she was reading and writing notes.

"Help, please! A snake bit our friend!" shouted Nebsin.

The doctor picked up her bag and some papyrus scripts. They ran to the school, where the boy was crying. His hand was red and sore.

"Will he be OK, Doctor?" asked the teacher.

"What kind of snake was it?" she asked, studying the boy's hand.

"It was small, and brown, with dark circles," said Nebsin.

The doctor looked at one of her papyrus rolls and said, "Good. That snake isn't **poisonous**<sup>[10]</sup>."

She took some **herbs**<sup>[11]</sup> out of her bag, put them into a bottle of oil, and shook it. She poured this onto a cloth.

"Keep this on the bite," the doctor said. "It will hurt for a while, but you won't get sick."

Nebsin was amazed. He watched as the doctor packed up her papyrus scripts and her bag.

"Excuse me. How did you learn to be a doctor?" he asked.

"It takes a long time!" said the doctor. "If you want to be a doctor, you should work hard here at school!"

[5] متحير

[6] لوح خشبي

[7] لدغ

[8] صرخ

[9] ورق بردی

[10] سام

[11] اعشاب

### III Language

#### Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

★ الكلام المباشر "Direct speech" هو الكلام الذي يأتي على لسان شخص ما مباشرة أو نصًا ويكون الكلام موضوعًا بين علامتي تنصيص "....." - "I am ill.", said Ali.

- We use **reported speech** to say what someone said.
- يستخدم الكلام الغير مباشر لأخبار بما قاله شخص ما.
- We change the tense from present, or future, to past.
- نقوم بتغيير الأزمنة من المضارع أو المستقبل إلى الماضي.

#### الجملة الخبرية : Statement

Speaker	فعل القول	[that]	subject	Verb	باقي الجملة
المتحدث Ali	said قال / told أخبر + مفعول	that	الفاعل he	فعل الجملة was	ill.
↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓
الشخص الذي قال الكلام المباشر	لاحظ أن : told لا بد أن يتبعها مفعول	[أداة ربط] يمكن حذفها	يتم تحويل الضمائر بما يتناسب مع المتكلم والمخاطب	يتحول الزمن إلى الأبعد	

#### ★ خطوات تحويل الجملة الخبرية إلى غير المباشر :

١. تحويل فعل القول كالتالي :

said تبقى كما هي	said	said to تحول إلى	told
say / says تبقى كما هي	say / says	say to / says to تحول إلى	tell / tells

#### ◀ لاحظ الفرق بين told / said

**said** لا يأتي بعدها مفعول

ex. Omar said, "I like chicken." → Omar said [that] he liked chicken.

**told** لا بد أن يأتي بعدها مفعول

ex. "I like chicken." Omar said to me. → Omar told me [that] he liked chicken.

٢. تحذف الأقواس ونربط بكلمة **that** ويمكن حذفها.

٣. يتم تحويل الضمائر بما يتوافق مع المتكلم والمخاطب :

ضمائر الفاعل		ضمائر المفعول		صفات الملكية	
Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
I	he / she	me	him / her	my	his / her
you	I / we	you	me / us	your	my / our
we	they	us	them	our	their

"I am going to do my homework", said Lara.

Lara said [that] she was going to do her homework.



- Present tense :

- Future tense :

- زمن المستقبل :

## Pop Quiz on Language

**1** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- 119

7. She said that the bus ..... there.  
a. is                      b. was                      c. were                      d. has
8. Basel said that he ..... going to the museum.  
a. was                      b. is                      c. will                      d. has
9. He said that he ..... never eaten sushi.  
a. had                      b. having                      c. has                      d. have
10. **AB** A man said they ..... building a new bridge.  
a. are                      b. have                      c. were                      d. was
11. Adam said ..... he liked swimming.  
a. this                      b. that                      c. them                      d. then
12. She ..... me that she was in the kitchen.  
a. tells                      b. says                      c. told                      d. said
13. They said that they ..... use the laptop.  
a. may                      b. can                      c. could                      d. will

## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية



1. **SB** She said she ..... [walk] with her friends. (التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر - الإسكندرية - المنتزه)
2. **SB** Sarah said that it was the only thing they ..... [can] do.
3. **AB** Lina said that the bridge ..... [has] collapsed !
4. Nada ..... [say] that she was reading comics.
5. Laila said her teacher ..... [need] a plan for the summer vacation.
6. He said they would ..... [spends] their weekend in Al Azhar Park.
7. She said she ..... [like] ice cream.
8. She said she ..... [be] living in Luxor then.
9. Hagar said she ..... [hasn't] seen Mera.
10. They said they ..... [will] come to the party.

## IV

## Writing skill

### Writing an opinion

- When you write about your opinion, you need to give reasons for it.  
عندما تكتب عن رأيك فانك تحتاج إلى إعطاء مبررات لرأيك.
- In the main ideas paragraphs, give different reasons for your opinion, and use phrases to introduce each new reason.  
في الفقرات التي تناقش الأفكار الرئيسية يجب عليك إبداء أسباب مختلفة لرأيك، وكذلك استخدام عبارات لتعبر عن كل سبب جديد.
- We use commas after these adverb phrases.  
نستخدم فاصلة سفلية (,) بعد تلك العبارات الظرفية.
- First of all, we can learn a lot ...
- In addition, school trips are often more interesting than ...
- Finally, we can continue learning when ...



# Test 14 | on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

• نصوص الاستماع  
في نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة في اختبار الوحدة]

## • 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who is Miss Basma ?

.....

2. When did Miss Basma tell them about the school trip ?

.....

3. What does Mona like ?

.....

4. Why are school trips exciting ?

.....

## • 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

poured – hand – snake – bottle – brown

Once in Ancient Egypt, there was a snake moving across the classroom floor of one of the schools. It was a small, [1] ..... snake. A boy tried to push the snake away, but it bit his [2] ....., and he screamed. The teacher called a doctor. The doctor said that the snake wasn't poisonous. She took some herbs out of her bag, put them into a [3] ..... of oil, and shook it. She [4] ..... this onto a cloth. She put this on the bite. "It would hurt for a while, but he wouldn't get sick," she said.

(Sharkia - East Zagazig 2025)

## • 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Nebsin's father was a scribe who worked at the pharaoh's palace. A scribe was someone who wrote about everything that happened in the pharaoh's court. One day, while Nebsin was in class and writing on his tablet, a snake bit a boy's hand. Nebsin quickly ran to the doctor's office. The doctor picked up her bag and some medicine, and they both ran back to the school. The boy was crying.

"What kind of snake was it ?" the doctor asked.

"It was small and brown with dark circles," said Nebsin.

"Good," said the doctor. "That snake isn't dangerous". The doctor put some herbs into a bottle of oil. She put the liquid onto the snake's bite.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Nebsin was writing on his ..... when the snake bit the boy.  
a. tablet                      b. notebook                      c. computer                      d. mobile phone
2. The opposite of the underlined word "dangerous" is .....  
a. unkind                      b. safe                      c. quick                      d. ill

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Where did Nebsin's father work ?  
.....

4. Why were scribes important in Ancient Egypt ?  
.....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Alaa said that the party ..... started. (Minia – Matai 2025)  
a. has                      b. is                      c. had                      d. will have
2. The coach said that they ..... well.  
a. play                      b. playing                      c. plays                      d. were playing
3. Mona said that ..... would visit her grandma.  
a. her                      b. him                      c. she                      d. us
4. Sara told Hana they ..... borrow their father's car.  
a. could                      b. can to                      c. can                      d. to can

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. **SB** did – bridge – collapse – When – the ?  
.....

2. trips – learning – are – School – for – important.  
.....

**6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**"Your opinion about school trips"**

**Guiding elements :**

- experiences
- interesting
- learn

.....  
.....  
.....



## Identify the general idea of the text



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.



التحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها في النص.



مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية العامة للنص].

اقرأ و قم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

## Step 1

## Read and learn how to answer.

In my opinion, school trips are exciting learning experiences.

First of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better. In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.

To sum up, school trips are a very important part of our education. I think we should try to go on one school trip every year.

Or : The main/general idea of the text is about " ..... " .

Or : The text talks about " ..... " .

Or : What's the main idea of the text ? What's the text about ?

Or : What's the best title for this text ?

Give a suitable title for this text.

a. Watching videos

c. School subjects

b. School trips

d. New books

## Step 2

## Read and answer the questions.

I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present. In my opinion, it is important that we understand how past events have created the present.

First of all, we can learn a lot by studying the past. History helps us understand our society and other cultures because we learn about life in the past, important artists, scientists, and politicians. In addition, we learn about how and why life has changed over the years.

• The text is about " ..... " .

Or : The main/general idea of the text is about " ..... " .

Or : The text talks about " ..... " .

Or : What's the main idea of the text ? /  
What's the text about ?

Or : What's the best title for this text ?

Give a suitable title for this text.

a. Studying history

c. The society

b. The present

d. Artists

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن [المساحات الخضراء على الأسقف] و [النوادي المدرسية] وتجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها في تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

## Topic

### Step 1 Review your vocabulary

#### Write the meaning :

..... سقف المبنى

..... الطبيعة

..... مساحات خضراء

..... ينظف

..... مرن

..... الظل

Green roofs

..... نادى التصوير

..... عقل

..... نادى الرياضة

..... وجبات

..... آلات موسيقية

..... يمثل

School clubs

### Step 2

#### Sentences

#### Complete the sentences :

1. Some students have their lessons in a garden on the ..... of the school.
2. They design ..... for schools on the top of building.
3. Green roofs bring ..... into the city.
4. They ..... and cool the air.
5. Desks are in the ..... but there are no walls.

1. We run and climb a rope in the ..... club.
2. We learn to take beautiful photos in the ..... club.
3. Art is good for your .....
4. We sing songs and play ..... in the music club.
5. We make ..... from different countries in the cooking club.

### Step 3

#### Topics

#### Write a paragraph using the sentences :

"Green roofs"

.....

.....

.....

.....

#### Write an email using the sentences :

"School clubs"

.....

.....

.....

.....



تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٩ جملة].

### 1 Classrooms on the roof!

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school<sup>[1]</sup>! The Shagara at school project designs gardens and green roofs for the school in Egypt<sup>[2]</sup>. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building<sup>[3]</sup>. They bring nature into the city<sup>[4]</sup>. They also clean and cool the air<sup>[5]</sup>. They are great for the environment<sup>[6]</sup>. This project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden<sup>[7]</sup>.

### 2 Your school week

We go to school from Sunday to Friday<sup>[8]</sup>. I have to wear a school uniform<sup>[9]</sup>. My school uniform and shoes have to be neat<sup>[10]</sup>. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny<sup>[11]</sup>. I sometimes get the bus with my friends<sup>[12]</sup>. We do more interesting subjects, like ICT<sup>[13]</sup>. I like using computers! School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm<sup>[14]</sup>. We have an hour for lunch<sup>[15]</sup>. I usually bring lunch from home<sup>[16]</sup>.

### 3 School trips

I think school trips are exciting learning experiences<sup>[17]</sup>. We can learn a lot by visiting new places<sup>[18]</sup>. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better<sup>[19]</sup>.

In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos<sup>[20]</sup>. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip<sup>[21]</sup>. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip<sup>[22]</sup>.

### 4 Green City School

At Green City School, they want to help the environment<sup>[23]</sup>. They use solar panels to make electricity<sup>[24]</sup>. They recycle a lot of paper<sup>[25]</sup>. They have a school garden to grow plants, vegetables, and fruit<sup>[26]</sup>. It is a great place to learn about nature<sup>[27]</sup>. The climbing frame in the Eco-playground is made of recycled materials<sup>[28]</sup>. In the garden we grow our own flowers, fruit and vegetables<sup>[29]</sup>.



# Review on Unit 3

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثالثة فى ورقة واحدة

## Vocabulary

green roofs	اسقف خضراء	uniform	زى موحد	repair	يصلح
sleds	زلجات	solar panels	الواح الطاقة الشمسية	steep	شديد الانحدار
timetable	جدول مواعيد	papyrus	ورق البردي	experiences	خبرات
flexible	مرن	principal	مستول - مدير المدرسة	learning	التعلم
tent	خيمة	demonstration	إيضاح - عرض	court	محكمة / فناء
cycle	يركب دراجة	collapse	ينهار	poisonous	سام

## Language

### 1 Adverbs of frequency : ظروف التكرار :

●●●●●	●●●○	●●○○	●○○○	○○○○○
always	usually	often	sometimes	never

#### ► Usage : الاستخدام

- We can use **adverbs of frequency** with the present simple to say **how often** something happens.

يمكننا أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط لتحديد عدد مرات تكرار حدوث شئ ما.

ex. - I **am never** late for school. - She **often walks** to school.

### 2 Using **make me + adj.** صفة

#### ► Formation : التكوين

**Subject + make(s) object + adjective** صفة

ex. - I have some friends. —→ - I'm happy.  
= My friends **make me** happy.

### 3 Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

يستخدم الكلام الغير مباشر الأخبار بما قاله شخص ما.

- We change the tense from present, or future, to past.

نقوم بتغيير الأزمنة من المضارع أو المستقبل إلى الماضي.

#### ► Statement : الجملة الخبرية

Speaker	فعل القول	[that]	subject	verb	باقي الجملة
المتحدث Ali	+ said قال / told أخبر + مفعول	+ that	+ الفاعل he	+ فعل الجملة was	+ ill.



# Test 15 | on Unit 3

• نصوص الاستماع  
• فى نهاية الكتاب.  
• التقييمات الشهرية  
• فى نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What school does Lilly go to ?

2. When did she start school ?

3. How old is Lilly now ?

4. What interesting subject they do ?

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

part - learn - events - subjects - society

I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present. It is important to understand how past [1] ..... have created the present. History helps us understand our [2] ..... and other cultures. In addition, we [3] ..... about how life has changed over the years. I think that studying history is an important [4] ..... of our education.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Lina lay awake, listening to the wind and rain. The storm lasted all night. Then, as the sun came up, she heard a crash. She ran to the window.

"What was that?" asked her sister, Sarah.

Lina looked at the river near their house. "Oh no!" she said. "The bridge has collapsed!"

The village where Lina and Sarah lived was small, and had steep mountains all around it. The bridge over the river was the quickest way to get to the town, with the school, stores, doctors, and sports center.

They ran to the kitchen to see their parents. "I've just listened to the radio," said Mom. "They said that the storm would stop soon. Then we can see what has happened."

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about "A .....".

a. river                      b. bridge                      c. boat                      d. school

2. The underlined word "collapsed" means .....

a. found out                      b. brought up                      c. fell down                      d. got up

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. Describe the village where they lived.

4. Why was the bridge very important ?

#### 4 The Reader

##### A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser was worried about the concert. [ ..... ]
2. Mayar and mom had fun in the park. [ ..... ]

##### B. Read and answer the questions.

1. Who did Asser go to the park with ?  
.....
2. What did Asser take when he went to the park ?  
.....

#### 5 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Traveling on trains ..... her tired.  
a. making                      b. make                      c. makes                      d. to make
2. They said they ..... going to Alexandria.  
a. have                      b. were                      c. will                      d. are
3. He ..... his homework in the evening.  
a. does always                      b. always does                      c. often do                      d. usually doing
4. Reading makes children ..... excited.  
a. to feel                      b. feels                      c. feel                      d. feeling

#### 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. feel - you - How - sport - does - make ?  
.....
2. solar - renewable - We - energy - panels - use - for.  
.....

#### 7 Write an email of SEVENTY [70] words about school clubs to your friend Saleem. Your friend's email address is saleem11@yahoo.com. Your name is Hatem and your email address is hatem90@yahoo.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

##### Guiding elements:

- What clubs are in your school ?
- Why do you like it ?
- Which club would you like to go to ?
- How does it make you feel ?

From

To

Subject

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How was Nebsin's bed ?

.....

2. Where did Nebsin go into ?

.....

3. Who was making breakfast ?

.....

4. What was Nebsin's father's job ?

.....

(Gharbia - Tanta 2025)

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

trips – child – visiting – videos – better

In my opinion, school trips are exciting learning experiences. First of all, we can learn a lot by [1] ..... new places. When we learn something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it [2] ..... In addition, school [3] ..... are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching [4] ..... .

(Beni Suef - Nasser 2024)

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions. (Menofia – Tala 2025)

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm eleven, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school. In Kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always lots of toys in the classroom. We do more writing now in Grade 6, and we do more interesting subjects, like ICT. I like using computers! We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school uniform, but my clothes and shoes have to be neat. School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the cafeteria, or outside in summer.

## A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about .....

a. Lilly's family

b. Lilly's school

c. Lilly's job

d. Lilly's home

2. The underlined word "neat" means .....

a. tidy

b. messy

c. ugly

d. clever

## B. Answer the following questions.

3. How does Lilly go to school when it is sunny ?

4. Where does Lilly eat her lunch ?

### 4 The Reader

#### A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Shady and his dad invited Asser to the park. (Cairo - West Nasr City 2025) [ ..... ]

2. Asser liked to play the guitar. (Menoufia - Ashmoun 2024) [ ..... ]

#### B. Read and answer the questions :

1. Where did Asser go to get the football ?

2. Why did Asser practice his song a lot ?

(Giza - October 2024)

### 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Lina said that the bridge ..... collapsed. (Dakahlia - West Mansoura 2025)

a. have                      b. has                      c. had                      d. having

2. Cooking club usually makes ..... hungry. (Sohag - Tema 2025)

a. me                      b. I                      c. his                      d. they

3. I ..... wear my school uniform. It's a school rule. (Luxor 2024)

a. never                      b. always                      c. sometimes                      d. often

4. Playing music for my parents ..... me proud. (Beni Suef - Nasser 2024)

a. makes                      b. make                      c. making                      d. to make

### 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. does - the doctor - on - What - the bite - put ? (Cairo - Al Sahel 2025)

2. roofs - Green - great - are - the environment - for. (Alexandria - Al-Gomrok 2024)

### 7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

#### Your school

##### Guiding elements:

- How do you go to school ?
- When does your school start ?
- Where do you study science ?
- How is your playground like ?

(Port Said - English supervision 2024 / Giza - Warraq 2025)



# UNIT

# 4

## We can make a difference !

يمكننا إحداث فرق !

### Aims of Unit Four :

In this unit I will ...

- describe myself and my friends.
- understand and use reported questions.
- listen to and give opinions.
- understand and use noun suffixes
- understand and use the superlative form of adjectives.
- read and understand a play.
- take part in a play.
- write a detailed personal profile.
- read and understand a story.

### الأهداف العامة للوحدة الرابعة :

في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- اصف نفسي واصدقائي.
- افهم واستخدم الأسئلة في الكلام الغير مباشر.
- استمع واعطى اراء.
- افهم واستخدم المقاطع المضافة لنهاية الأسماء.
- افهم واستخدم صيغة التفضيل من الصفات.
- اقرأ وافهم مسرحية.
- اشترك في مسرحية.
- اكتب ملف شخصي مفصل.
- اقرأ وافهم قصة.







## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

glasses	نظارة	expressions	تعابير
braces	تقويم الأسنان [دعامات للأسنان]	curly hair	شعر مجعد
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	straight hair	شعر مستقيم
hearing aid	سماعة الأذن	mean = unkind	بخيل / قاس
disability	عجز - إعاقة	dark hair	شعر داكن اللون
sounds	أصوات	finger spelling	لغة الأصابع
sign language	لغة الإشارة	communicating	التواصل
lip-reading	قراءة الشفاه	text messages	رسائل نصية

## • Extra vocabulary

hearing difficulties	صعوبات السمع	equally	على حد سواء
laugh	يضحك	creative	مبدع
imagine	يتخيل	language classes	فصول تعليم اللغة
guess	يخمن	geography	مادة الجغرافيا
meow	مواء [صوت القطعة]	invite	يُدعو
quiet noises	أصوات هادئة	forehead	الجبهة [مقدمة الرأس]
loud noises	أصوات صاخبة	press	يضغط
sporty	رياضي	boring	ممل

## • Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
tell يخبر	told	told
say يقول	said	said
teach يُدرس	taught	taught

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

feel a bit sad	يشعر ببعض الحزن	communicate with	يتواصل مع
look the same	يبدو متشابهين	do American sign language	يقوم بأداء لغة الإشارة الأمريكية
different to	مختلف عن	[be] able to + inf.	قادر على
wear braces	يضع تقويم الأسنان	make a difference	يحدث فرق
get straight	يستقيم		

## Notes for parents

## • Did you know ?

- Some people can read with their fingers! Louis Braille invented the Braille writing system when he was only fifteen !





## Pop Quiz

## on Vocabulary



► Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- We are not the same, we are .....  
a. difficult                      b. boring                      c. different                      d. lazy
- Ali is ..... , he always makes fun of his classmates.  
a. kind                      b. unkind                      c. clever                      d. creative
- Every day, I hear my cat ..... in the morning.  
a. talking                      b. meowing                      c. singing                      d. reading
- There are many ways to communicate with people who have hearing .....  
a. classes                      b. differences                      c. abilities                      d. difficulties
- Mark ..... his friends to come to his birthday party.  
a. imagined                      b. laughed                      c. invited                      d. guessed
- Listening to ..... music makes me relax before sleeping.  
a. boring                      b. quiet                      c. noisy                      d. high
- ..... reading is a good way to communicate with people who have hearing difficulties.  
a. Tooth                      b. Lip                      c. Eye                      d. Ear
- Using the phones helps many people ..... with each other.  
a. kill                      b. visit                      c. communicate                      d. spell
- The life would be ..... if we were all the same. I don't like the idea.  
a. amazing                      b. boring                      c. fun                      d. exciting
- I couldn't see well yesterday because I forgot my .....  
a. lunchbox                      b. eraser                      c. glasses                      d. braces
- My sister wears ..... to get her teeth straight.  
a. glasses                      b. braces                      c. necklaces                      d. earrings
- Omar uses a/an ..... because he can't walk well.  
a. pencil case                      b. wheelchair                      c. knife                      d. armchair
- The old man has problems with hearing, so he has a/an .....  
a. wheelchair                      b. brace                      c. hearing aid                      d. armchair
- If someone is ..... , the students should ask their teachers for help.  
a. kind                      b. mean                      c. clever                      d. smart
- Her hair isn't ..... , it's straight.  
a. brown                      b. curly                      c. black                      d. dark

## II Listening and Reading

### 1. Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

#### Lesson 1

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Why we are all special	different to	We are different to each other.
	curly - straight	Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is straight.
	glasses	Waleed wears glasses.
	braces	Injy wears braces to help her teeth get straight.
	wheelchair	Amal uses a wheelchair because she can't walk well.
	hearing aid	Amina has a hearing aid because she has problems hearing.
	look after	We look after each other in our classroom.
	equally	We are all equally important.

#### Lesson 2

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Ways to communicate	communicate	We can use many ways to communicate with each other.
	difficulties	We should help people with hearing difficulties.
	meow	I heard our cat meowing.
	sign language	Lip-reading and sign language are useful ways to communicate.
	finger spelling	There is a way of communicating called finger spelling.
	text messages	I send text messages to my friends.

### 2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

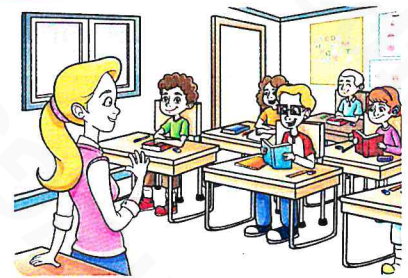
#### Lesson 1

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

#### Why we're all special by Reem

Today, our teacher, Mrs Mona, asked us, "How are we different to each other?"

That's an easy question to answer ! Asser is very tall. He's taller than everyone else in the class. I'm very short. I have green eyes and Asser has brown eyes. Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is very straight, and he wears glasses. Injy wears **braces**<sup>[1]</sup> to help her teeth get straight. Amal uses a **wheelchair**<sup>[2]</sup> because she cannot walk well. Amina has a **hearing aid**<sup>[3]</sup> because she has problems hearing. We have different families, too - I have three sisters, but



Mrs Mona teaching our class

[1] تقويم الأسنان

[2] كرسي متحرك

[3] سماعة الاذن



my best friend Amal has two brothers ! My friend Dalia loves sports, but I prefer language classes.

Then, Mrs Mona asked us to tell our friend about something that makes them **special**<sup>[4]</sup>. I told Amal I love her curly hair and the way she helps me with math - she's the best at math in the class ! And Amal told me she loves the way I make her laugh when she's feeling a bit sad.

Mrs Mona said, "**Imagine**<sup>[5]</sup> a world where we're all the same. What would it be like ?"

"Actually," said Sherif, "I think it would be a bit **boring**<sup>[6]</sup>."

"Yes," said Sally, "it would be really boring."

"And imagine if everyone was good at the same things ?" said Mrs Mona.

"Well, then it wouldn't be very exciting," I said.

"It's good that everyone is different," said Mrs Mona. "We don't look the same because our families are different. Some of us are tall, some short, some have curly hair, and some have straight hair. Some of us have two brothers and sisters, and others have three. Some of us are good at music, and others are good at sports." Everyone agreed.

"The important thing is that we look after each other in our classroom. People shouldn't be **unkind**<sup>[7]</sup> to someone because they're different. Our school is for everyone - we are all **equally**<sup>[8]</sup> important," said Mrs Mona.

"But what should we do if we see someone being mean at school ?" asked Injy. "I saw someone being unkind to Tarek the other day because he forgot his glasses, and so he couldn't see well."

"You should always come and see me, or another teacher," said Mrs Mona.

"Here at school we should all help each other."

[4] مميز

[5] تخيل

[6] ممل

[7] قاسى

[8] على حد سواء

## Lesson 2

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
فى نهاية الكتاب

Today, our teacher invited an interesting person called Mr Kamal to come and talk to us in class. Mr Kamal told us about the best ways to communicate with people who have hearing difficulties.

First, he asked us what sounds we heard every day. We had lots of ideas. My friend Adam said he heard other people talking, and I said I heard our cat meowing in the morning !

Then, Mr Kamal asked what we thought would happen if we couldn't hear well. It really made us think ! Adam asked if we would only be able to hear loud noises. Mr Kamal said that he was right. It is difficult to hear quiet noises.

Next, Mr Kamal asked us what ways we communicate with each other. We thought there were lots of ways. I said that talking was a way of communicating. Adam said that using expressions, like smiling, was another. Younis said that writing messages on his phone was his favorite way to communicate.

Then, Mr Kamal told us about a really clever way to communicate! Can you guess what it is ?

## Reported questions الأسئلة في الكلام غير المباشر

## Remember

When we report questions, we change the tense and word order, and remove the word do. When it is a Yes/No question, we use if :

1

Yes / No  
question

السؤال بـ "هل"

◀ يتم تحويل السؤال بـ «هل» كالآتي :

١. "said, said to" تحول إلى asked / wondered / wanted to know.

٢. يتم حذف الأقواس ونربط بـ "if / whether" بمعنى إذا / لو إذا كان السؤال بـ "هل".

٣. يتم تغيير الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب.

٤. تتغير الأزمنة من المضارع إلى الماضي كما سبق شرحه في الجملة الخبرية.

ex. 1. "Have you ever been to Japan, Maha ?", said Nora.

- Nora asked Maha if she had ever been to Japan.

2. "Do you hear lots of sounds outside ?"

- He asked us if we heard lots of sounds outside.

2

Wh-  
Question

السؤال بأداة استفهام

◀ يتم تحويل السؤال في صيغة الكلام المباشر إلى غير مباشر كالآتي :

١. تحول "said / said to" إلى "asked / wondered / wanted to know".

٢. تحذف الأقواس ونربط بنفس أداة الاستفهام الموجودة.

٣. بعد أداة الاستفهام نقوم بترتيب الجملة [الفاعل + الفعل .....].

٤. نحذف علامة الاستفهام ونضع نقطة في نهاية الجملة بعد تحويل الضمائر والأزمنة.

ex. 1. - Laila said , "Where is Ali ?".

- Laila asked where Ali was.

2. - Ashraf said to me , "When can we meet ?"

- Ashraf asked me [wanted to know] when we could meet.

لاحظ أن :

• حذف الفعل المساعد [do/does] وتحويل الفعل الأساسي إلى الماضي.

ex. \* Sarah said to me, "What do you want ?".

- Sarah asked me what I wanted.

راجع جدول تحويلات الضمائر في الوحدة السابقة





## Pop Quiz

## on Language

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ahmed ..... me where the book was. (Sharkia - Mashtoul 2025)  
a. ask                      b. asked                      c. asking                      d. asks
2. Dina asked me ..... I had a mobile phone. (Luxor - Esna 2025)  
a. what                      b. but                      c. if                      d. so
3. The doctor asked me if I ..... see all the shapes.  
a. can                      b. could                      c. have                      d. do
4. She asked me if I ..... some cookies.  
a. want                      b. wanted                      c. wants                      d. to want
5. He asked if we ..... the results of the exam.  
a. knew                      b. know                      c. knows                      d. known
6. Mona asked Hala how she ..... at work.  
a. communicating                      b. communicate  
c. communicates                      d. communicated
7. Talia asked her sister what she ..... doing.  
a. will                      b. is                      c. was                      d. have
8. "Where ..... you live ?" Noha asked Salma.  
a. does                      b. do                      c. have                      d. had
9. They asked him what he ..... eaten.  
a. had                      b. have                      c. has                      d. having
10. She asked me where I .....  
a. am                      b. were                      c. is                      d. was
11. Tarek asked if Hend ..... sending text messages.  
a. like                      b. likes                      c. liked                      d. like to
12. Wael ..... Yara if she could hear the bird.  
a. asks                      b. asked                      c. asking                      d. ask
13. She asked me if ..... worked from home.  
a. we                      b. her                      c. I                      d. his
14. The officer asked me who ..... the bag.  
a. finding                      b. finds                      c. found                      d. find
15. Mrs Elham asked me if I ..... to the library.  
a. was going                      b. am going                      c. will go                      d. go

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. She asked her if ..... [her] could do everything with the tablet.
2. She asked her mother if she ..... [is] going to the market.
3. The old man asked ..... [I] what time the train left.
4. His father asked him where he ..... [go] after school.
5. They asked him when he ..... [can] finish his project.

تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية



# Test 17 | on Lessons 1 & 2

• نصوص الاستماع  
في نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة في اختبار الوحدة]

## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How old is Hani ?

2. What color is Hani's hair ?

3. What subject is he good at ?

4. What sport do they play ?

(Behira - Rosseta 2024)

## 2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

Why - special - When - has - families

**Reem** : Do you think we are all different ?

**Yara** : Yes. Everyone [1] ..... different things.

**Reem** : [2] ..... are we all different ?

**Yara** : Because we are from different [3] .....

**Reem** : Do you think being different is a good thing ?

**Yara** : Yes. In my opinion, that makes us [4] ..... (Beni Suef - Nasser 2025)

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Our teacher invited an interesting person to talk to us today. His name was Mr Kamal and he told us about the best ways to communicate with people with hearing difficulties.

First, he asked us what sounds we heard every day. We had lots of ideas. My friend Adam said he heard other people talking and I said I heard our cat meowing in the morning !

Then Mr Kamal asked us if we heard lots of sounds outside. Younis said we did.

Next, Mr Kamal asked what we thought would happen if we couldn't hear well. It really made us think ! Adam asked if we would only be able to hear **loud** noises.

Mr Kamal said that he was right. It is difficult to hear quiet noises. He asked us what ways we communicate with each other. We thought there were lots of ways. I said that talking was a way of communication. Adam said that using expressions, like smiling, was another. Younis said that writing messages on his phone was his favorite way to communicate.



**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The underlined word "**loud**" is the opposite of ".....".  
a. fast                      b. quiet                      c. high                      d. modern
2. The text aims to help us ..... with people with hearing difficulties.  
a. ask                      b. help                      c. communicate                      d. write

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Who invited Mr Kamal ?  
.....

4. What are the ways we use to communicate ?  
.....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Ali asked Hana ..... she liked his new glasses.  
a. if                      b. what                      c. and                      d. but
2. He asked what ..... if you got up early.  
a. happen                      b. happens                      c. happened                      d. happening
3. The students ..... where people learned sign language.  
a. told                      b. asked                      c. said                      d. say
4. Mom asked me how the exam .....  
a. will                      b. is                      c. does                      d. was

(Cairo – Mostaqbal 2025)

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. to – we – How – different – are – each other ?  
.....  
(Sharkia - West Zagazig 2025)

2. use – language – communicate – sign – to – They.  
.....

**6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**We're all different**

**Guiding elements:**

- same
- straight
- look after
- important

(Fayoum - Etsa 2024 / Sohag – Maragha 2025)

# ▶ Amazing David!

## ▶ Can I work with you ?



## I

## Vocabulary

## • Key vocabulary

prosthetic arm	ذراع اصطناعية	poster	ملصق - إعلان
comic books	قصص مضحكة	movable elbow	كوع متحرك
advertisement	إعلان	bricks	مكعبات - قوالب
kindness	عطف	group	مجموعة

## • Extra vocabulary

drawing	الرسم	prices	الأسعار
Spain	أسبانيا	bus ride	رحلة بالحافلة
cheaply	بسعر رخيص	TV channel	قناة تلفزيونية
university	جامعة	confident	واثق
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	amazing	مدهش - مذهل
tropical	استوائي	website	موقع إلكتروني
fantastic	رائع	lovely	جميل
excellent	ممتاز	important	هام
characters	شخصيات	bakery	مخبز
emotions	مشاعر	feelings	مشاعر

## • Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make animations	يصنع رسوم متحركة	act it out	يمثل
do taekwondo	يمارس رياضة التايكوندو	researching information	البحث عن معلومات
work with	يعمل مع	of course	بالطبع
good at + [n. /inf. + ing]	جيد في	look proud	يبدو فخورًا
a little later	بعد قليل	find out	يكشف

## Noun Suffixes

Sometimes nouns have a different ending called a suffix.

أحيانًا تنتهي الأسماء بنهايات مختلفة تسمى لاحقة.

## ▶ The suffix : اللاحقة

The suffix is a letter or group of letters added at the end of a word to make a new word :

اللاحقة : هي إضافة حرف أو مجموعة من الأحرف في نهاية الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة.



### ► Examples :

base	الاصلة الكلمة	suffix	اللاحقة	[noun]
advertise	يعلن	-ment		advertisement إعلان
agree	يوافق	-ment		agreement اتفاق
entertain	يسلي	-ment		entertainment تسلية
improve	يحسن	-ment		improvement تحسين - تنمية
ill	مريض	-ness		illness المرض
kind	طيب - عطوف	-ness		kindness لطف - عرض
happy	سعيد	-ness		happiness السعادة
sad	حزين	-ness		sadness حزن
inform	يخبر - يعلم	-tion		information معلومات
relax	يسترخي	-tion		relaxation استرخاء
transform	يحول	-tion		transformation تحويل
create	يبدع - يخلق	-ion		creation خلق - إبداع
transport	ينقل	-tion		transportation وسائل النقل



### Pop Quiz

### on Vocabulary



### تدريب تلقائي

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

### ► Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- After the accident, she has prosthetic arm with a movable .....  
a. ear                      b. elbow                      c. eye                      d. mouth
- I like reading ..... because they are funny.  
a. video games                      b. robots                      c. comic books                      d. cartoons
- Having a ..... arm helps him with his disability.  
a. weak                      b. prosthetic                      c. unhealthy                      d. bad
- Be ..... and stop worrying about everything around you.  
a. nervous                      b. confident                      c. weak                      d. mean
- She started to ..... more about her disability after reading a book about hearing problems.  
a. plan                      b. draw                      c. live                      d. understand
- These prosthetic arms aren't expensive because they are made of ..... bricks.  
a. silver                      b. plastic                      c. gold                      d. water
- My brother is good at ..... animations, he is creative.  
a. reading                      b. joining                      c. painting                      d. making
- We get the noun from the verb "advertise" by adding the suffix ".....".  
a. -ly                      b. -ment                      c. -ness                      d. -ion
- The girl showed her ..... when she helped the old woman.  
a. kind                      b. kindly                      c. kindness                      d. unkind

10. Entertainment and agreement are .....  
a. verbs                      b. adverbs                      c. nouns                      d. adjectives
11. The words "inform" and "relax" are .....  
a. nouns                      b. adjectives                      c. adverbs                      d. verbs
12. I always buy fresh bread and cakes from this .....  
a. bakery                      b. garage                      c. office                      d. apartment
13. His parents were ..... of him when he got the gold medal.  
a. lazy                      b. proud                      c. boring                      d. sad
14. Kindness and ..... are very important in our life.  
a. happy                      b. happily                      c. happiness                      d. unhappy
15. To get the noun from the verb "create" ; we use the suffix " .....".  
a. -ness                      b. -ly                      c. -ion                      d. -ed

## II Listening and Reading

### 1. Main points on listening and reading texts      نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

#### Lesson 3

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Amazing David	prosthetic arm	David built a prosthetic arm with plastic bricks.
	movable elbow	He designed it with a movable elbow.
	comic book	David's dad wrote a comic book about David.
	disabilities	It helps people understand more about disabilities.
	plastic bricks	David made his arm with plastic bricks.

### 2. Listening and Reading Texts

نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

#### Lesson 3

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

David Aguilar Amphoux is from Spain. When he was 18, he built a **prosthetic arm**<sup>[1]</sup> with **plastic bricks**<sup>[2]</sup> because he only had one arm. He designed it with a **movable elbow**<sup>[3]</sup> and a hand to pick things up. David's dad has written a comic book about David. Everyone thinks this is great because it helps people understand more about **disabilities**<sup>[4]</sup>. Prosthetic arms and legs can be difficult to make, but David made his cheaply with plastic bricks. After university, he wants to create cheap prosthetic arms and legs for people.

[1] ذراع اصطناعية      [2] قوالب بلاستيكية      [3] كوع متحرك      [4] إعاقات



## Lesson 4

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

**Mrs Randa** : OK, everyone, I want you to get into groups to make **posters**<sup>[1]</sup> about animals that live in **tropical rainforests**<sup>[2]</sup>. It should be an **advertisement**<sup>[3]</sup> for the rainforest. I would like colorful posters with lots of interesting information. You can get in your groups now. I'd like everyone to work together and don't forget – **kindness**<sup>[4]</sup> is important.



**Fares** : Tamer, Gameela, Wael, can I work with you ?

**Tamer** : Oh no, sorry. We're already working with Magdy. Magdy, come here!

**Magdy** : I'm coming !

**Fares** : Sherif and Lamar, can I work with you ?

**Sherif** : Er no, we're working with Fareeda.

**Fares starts to feel a bit sad and goes to talk to Mrs Randa.**

**Fares** : I can't find a group to work with, Mrs Randa. Everyone has their group.

**Mrs Randa** : Oh dear! Of course we can find you someone. Let's go and talk to Amira. Amira, who are you working with in your group ?

**Amira** : I'm working with Samer and Mariam, but we need someone else.

**Mrs Randa** : Excellent! Here's Fares !

**Amira** : Hi, Fares! What would you like to do for the poster ?

**Fares** : I'd love to draw the pictures !

**Amira** : That's fantastic! I'm good at writing, Samer is good at **design**<sup>[5]</sup>, and Mariam is great at researching information and finding photos. If you can draw pictures, then we will make a very good team !

**A little later.....**

**Mrs Randa** : These posters are beautiful. Who did these lovely pictures ?

**Samer** : That was Fares, Mrs Randa – he really worked hard to make our poster.

**Fares smiles and looks very proud**<sup>[6]</sup>.

[1]	ملصقات
[2]	غابات استوائية مطيرة
[3]	إعلان
[4]	عطف
[5]	تصميم
[6]	فخور

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

**Reem** : Would you both like to come shopping with me? I want to buy a present for my mom.

**Mazen** : Oh, that's nice, Reem. Is it her birthday ?

**Reem** : No, it isn't. I just want to buy her a present for being the best mom. I'm going to use my birthday money from last month.

**Talia** : That's a great idea. My mom always says, "kindness is important", and that's a kind thing to do. Your mom will love a present. What do you want to buy her ?

**Reem** : I was thinking of buying her some special cookies, or cakes. I saw an advertisement for the new bakery in town. They make really special cakes and cookies. They put them in a white box with some pretty paper.

**Mazen**: That would be a great present, Reem. Where's the bakery ? Let's go there now.

**Reem** : Hmm ... I'm not sure. It's called Cake Creations. They probably have a website.

**Talia** : OK. If we look at their website, we could get their address and some more information - like what kind of cakes they make and the prices.

**Mazen**: Great. I'll look at my phone and find the website.

**Reem** : Thanks Mazen.

## Speaking

### Asking for opinions

السؤال عن الرأي

What do you think about ... ?

ما رأيك في ... ؟

What about .... + [noun/inf. + ing] ?

ماذا عن ... ؟

What do you think ?

ماذا تعتقد ... ؟

### Giving opinions

إبداء الرأي

In my opinion, ....

في رأيي ....

To me, ....

بالنسبة لي ....

I think that ....

اعتقد أن ....



What do you think about reading comic books ?

ما رأيك في قراءة القصص المضحكة ؟



In my opinion, it is interesting.

اعتقد انها شيء شيق.



# Test 18 | on Lessons 3&4

• نصوص الاستماع  
• فى نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل [تدريبات القصة فى اختبار الوحدة]

## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who is your best friend ?

2. Where does Noha live ?

3. What is Noha's favorite hobby ?

4. How often does Noha write you a letter ?

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

understand - arm - book - movable - foot

David is from Spain. When he was 18, he built a prosthetic [1] ..... with plastic bricks because he only had one arm. He designed it with a [2] ..... elbow and a hand to pick things up. David's dad has written a comic [3] ..... about David. Everyone thinks this is great because it helps people [4] ..... more about disabilities. Prosthetic arms and legs can be difficult to make, but David made his cheaply with plastic bricks.

(Ismailia – El Qassaseen 2025)

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

A doctor was called to treat a rich man's son. He was skillful enough to save the boy. The rich man was very grateful to the doctor. To show his thanks to the doctor, he offered him a small but beautiful bag. When the doctor saw the bag, he became very angry as he had expected a large sum of money. He said angrily, "A bag is a suitable present for a friend, but I'm a doctor and I need money to get my needs."

The father quietly asked the doctor to tell him about the money he wanted. The doctor replied, "Fifty pounds". The rich man opened the bag to take out a hundred pounds which he had placed inside. He handed fifty pounds to the doctor, took the bag and placed the rest of the money in his pocket.

You may imagine the doctor's sorrow [حزن] when the boy's father kept the rest of the money for himself.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The doctor was sorry because he lost .....  
a. one hundred pounds                      b. fifty pounds  
c. fifty pounds and a bag                      d. nothing
2. The meaning of the underlined word "**grateful**" is .....  
a. thankful                      b. impolite                      c. helpful                      d. unkind

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Why was the rich man grateful to the doctor ?  
.....

4. How much money did the doctor want ?  
.....

(Minya - Minya 2024)

**4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. built - plastic - He - with - arm - a prosthetic - bricks.

(Port Said - North Port Said 2025)

2. David - very - In my - clever - opinion, - is .

**5 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**Working together on a poster**

**Guiding elements:**

- animals
- kindness
- information

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

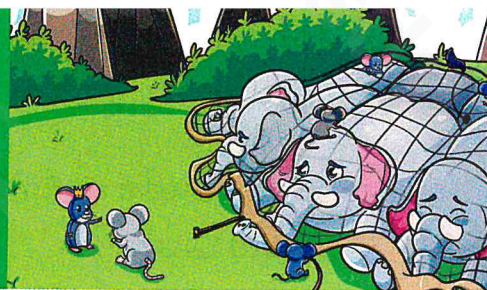
.....

.....

.....



- ▶ Language
- ▶ Writing a personal profile
- ▶ Story : Hana saves the day



## I Vocabulary

### • Key vocabulary

herd	قطيع	powerful	قوى / ذو نفوذ	respect	يحترم
hunter	صياد	leader	قائد	personal	شخصي
profile	ملف تعريف	route	طريق	hobbies	هوايات
comment	تعليق	entrance	مدخل	walker	مشاية
cerebral palsy	الشلل الدماغي	roar	زئير [يصدر صوتًا عاليًا]	relieved	مرتاح البال
crawl	يزحف - يخبو	physiotherapist	أخصائي العلاج الطبيعي	snack bar	مطعم الوجبات الخفيفة

### • Extra vocabulary

path	طريق	net	شبكة	follow	يتبع
needs	احتياجات	change	يغير	the countryside	الريف
local	محلي	chart	جدول بياني	score	يحرز أهداف
mall	مركز تجاري	brain	مخ	receive	يستلم - يتلقى
admire	يعجب	scared	خائف - مرعوب	snack	وجبة خفيفة
stickers	ملصقات	call	ينادي - يتصل	thankful	ممتن - شاكر
notice	يلاحظ	walking frame	إطار المشي [ممشى]	helpful	متعاون
injuries	إصابات	nod	يوميء / يهز برأسه	serious	جاد / خطير
school blog	مدونة مدرسية	member	عضو	ending	نهاية
situation	موقف			mice	فئران

### • Conjugation of irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
hurt يؤدي	hurt	hurt
feel يشعر	felt	felt
lose يفقد	lost	lost
catch يمسك - يصطاد	caught	caught
throw يلقى	threw	thrown

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
leader	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the most powerful person or animal in a group, for example, a king or queen</li> <li>the most important person or animal in a group, who controls the others</li> </ul>
herd	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a group of elephants</li> <li>a group of animals that live together, such as horses, cows, deer, or elephants</li> </ul>
hunter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a person who tries to catch or kill wild animals</li> <li>a person that kills animals for food or sport</li> </ul>
roar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>to make a very loud noise</li> <li>a loud sound made by lions and other large animals</li> </ul>
route	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a path or a way to go somewhere</li> <li>a way that you follow to get from one place to another</li> </ul>
decorate	to add something to an object or place to make it look better
walker	something that people use to help them walk
crawl	to move along the ground using both arms and legs
physiotherapist	a person who helps people with injuries or disabilities

• **Important expressions and prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

during the day	أثناء النهار	score baskets	يسجل نقاط في كرة السلة
get caught	يتم اصطياده	[be] into sports	مهتم بالرياضة
walk along	يمشي بمحاذاة - بامتداد	arrange meeting up	يرتب مقابلة - لقاء
get out	يخرج	come over	يزور
have a meeting	يعقد اجتماع	pull himself up on	يسحب نفسه إلى أعلى مستندًا إلى
keen on	حريص على	in danger	في خطر
as well as	بالإضافة إلى		
report a problem	يبلغ عن مشكلة		



**Pop Quiz**

**on Vocabulary**

**تدريب تلقائي**

يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية



► **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

- All ..... of our community can make a difference.
  - journeys
  - members
  - mice
  - herds
- We should ..... the different needs of people.
  - damage
  - respect
  - store
  - break
- The fishermen use their ..... to catch a lot of fish.
  - nails
  - axes
  - nets
  - shoes



4. He is very good at playing basketball. He always ..... a lot of points.  
a. kicks                      b. scores                      c. waves                      d. hits
5. If you have a toothache, you should go to the .....  
a. vet                      b. dentist                      c. builder                      d. engineer
6. The ..... is a person who tries to catch wild animals.  
a. leader                      b. plumber                      c. farmer                      d. hunter
7. The leader should be .....  
a. lazy                      b. ugly                      c. powerful                      d. weak
8. A loud sound made by lions and other large animals is .....  
a. roaring                      b. meowing                      c. singing                      d. crying
9. A ..... is a group of animals that live together such as horses.  
a. festival                      b. competition                      c. race                      d. herd
10. The mice ..... the nets with their teeth.  
a. left                      b. bit                      c. laughed                      d. broke

## II Listening and Reading

### 1. Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة

#### Lesson 6

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Dalia's personal profile	keen on	Dalia is keen on walking across the village.
	photography	Dalia is into photography.
	into sports	As well as this, Dalia is really into sports.
	mall	Dalia loves going to the mall.
	dentist	She'd like to be a dentist.
	profile	Dalia's personal profile is interesting.

#### Lesson 7

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Hana saves the day	walker	Hana's new walker arrived.
	decorate	Hana and her friend decorate the new walker.
	physiotherapist	Hana's physiotherapist is called Donia.
	cerebral palsy	The name for what Hana has is cerebral palsy.
	little boy	A woman lost her little boy in the park.
	crawl	He can't walk. He crawls along the ground.
Hana saves the day	thankful	His mom was thankful for Hana because she found him.
	relieved	They were all so relieved and happy.
	celebrate	They had an ice cream to celebrate.

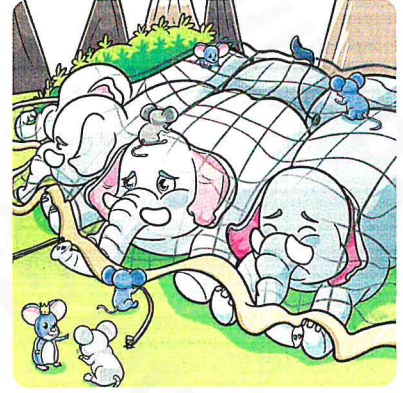
## Lesson 5

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

## The elephants and the mice

Many years ago, a herd of elephants lived in India. They were happy, and their **leader**<sup>[1]</sup>, the queen, was the kindest and best of the elephants. During the day, it was very hot, and the elephants liked to swim in the lake.

Near that lake, there was an old village. Nobody lived in the village now, but there were hundreds of mice. Their leader, the king, was kind. The elephants and the mice lived well together.



But, one day, the elephants changed their **route**<sup>[2]</sup> to the lake. This meant they walked along a **path**<sup>[3]</sup> that was too close to the mice. Many of the elephants didn't see the mice. They walked on them and hurt them.

After a while, the mice said to the mouse king, "This cannot continue! It isn't safe for us!"

The mouse king said, "Don't worry - I'll talk to the elephant queen," and he went to see her.

The mouse king met the elephant queen and explained the problem. She was **shocked**<sup>[4]</sup> to hear what was happening and agreed to go a different route.

"Thank you for listening and respecting our needs," said the mouse king, "One day, I hope we can help you if you're in a difficult situation."

The elephant queen nodded, but thought, "We elephants are the most **powerful**<sup>[5]</sup> animals in India - why would we need help from little mice?"

A few weeks later, some **hunters**<sup>[6]</sup> were watching the elephants and left nets. The next day, when the elephants went to the lake, they got caught in the nets. They couldn't move, and they **roared**<sup>[7]</sup> and roared, making the loudest noise. The mice heard the loud noise and came running. Quickly, they started biting the nets. The elephants could get out!

The next day, the elephant queen came to see the mouse king and said, "Thank you so much! You saved some elephants from the hunters! You showed us that all members of our community, from the biggest to the smallest, can **make a difference**<sup>[8]</sup>."

The mouse king felt like the happiest and proudest mouse in the village!

[1] قائد

[2] طريق

[3] ممر

[4] مصدوم

[5] قوى

[6] صيادين

[7] يصدر صوت عالى

[8] يحدث فرقاً



## Lesson 6

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

### Dalia's personal profile

Hi everybody!

How are things ?

My name's Dalia. I'm eleven, and I live in Alexandria. I go to school at Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends. I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces. I have an older brother and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family !

I'm keen on walking with my family and friends, and the countryside near where I live is really amazing. I'm into photography. I like taking photos of all the beautiful things I see in the countryside.

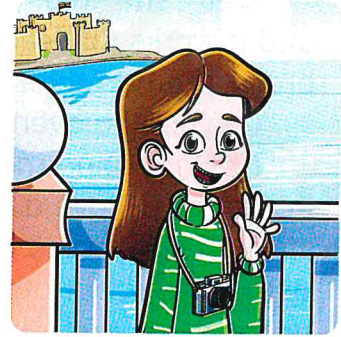
I also love listening to music from my country and all over the world.

As well as this, I'm really into sports. I play volleyball at my local club, and we have games about once a month.

On the weekend, I love going to the mall with my friends and family, and then I go to my grandma's to watch movies with her. We talk a lot, and she lives near my house, so it's easy for me to get home.

I think a lot about the future, and I think I'd like to be a dentist, like my dad. What about you ? What do you look like ? What are your hobbies ?

Write and tell me about yourself !



## Lesson 7

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة  
في نهاية الكتاب

### Hana saves the day

Hana is a good friend who lives on my street. One day, after school, she called me.

"My new walker arrived. Do you want to come over and help me decorate it?"

Excited, I ran to her house. As she gets taller, Hana receives a new walker every year.

When the new one arrives, we decorate it. Hana's favorite color is green, so we painted it green and decorated it with stars and stickers. It looked awesome.

"What should we do now, Reem ?" asked Hana.

"I think we should go to the park," I said. We often go for a walk to the park after school. Hana's physiotherapist, Donia, says it's important for Hana to get fresh air and exercise her legs so they get stronger.



At the park, we met our friends. They said Hana's new walker looked great. Our new friend, Rasha, asked Hana why she needed a walker.

"Well," she said, "when I was born, something happened to my brain and it works differently to some other people's. My dad calls it my special brain. The name for what I have is cerebral palsy."

"Can you do everything with the walker?" asked Rasha.

"No, for eating meals I have a special chair at home, and for going out in the car, I have a special seat - it's really comfortable."

Then we walked a little more with our friends. Hana was walking behind with Nadine, our other friend. Suddenly, a woman came running towards us, and she was crying.

"I can't see my little boy!" she said. "I turned around to get him a snack from my bag, and now I can't see him!"

"How old is your little boy?" asked Rasha.

"Only one. He can't walk, he crawls along the ground."

So we all looked in the grass, and the snack bar, but we didn't see him. Then, I noticed there was a group of trees behind where the woman was sitting.

"Let's look over there!" I said. "And where's Hana?"

Nobody knew. We all ran over to the trees, quite scared because it was near the road.

"Adam!" shouted the woman, and she stopped crying.

There was Adam, pulling himself up on Hana's walker, and Hana was talking to him quietly. His mom was so thankful that Hana found him. We were all so relieved and happy, and we had an ice cream to celebrate!

### What is Adam's disability?

It was Thursday afternoon and for Adam, this was the best day of the week. Adam went to basketball club after school on a Thursday. Today was special. His mom was waiting for him at the school entrance.

"I've brought you some water and a snack, Adam. You should eat something before you play," she said.

"Thanks, Mom, I forgot about eating," said Adam.

"That's because you're so excited," his mom said, smiling. "Come on, Adam, let's get in the car."

Fifteen minutes later, they arrived at the sports center. Adam saw his friend Hazem, who was waiting for him at the entrance.

"Hi, Adam. Are you excited about the game?" he shouted.





"Hi, Hazem! Yes! It's going to be the most exciting game ever," Adam said. He waited for his mom as she took out his wheelchair from the back of the car.

"Look, Mom," said Adam. "There's Mr Adel, my physiotherapist. He has come to watch the game. Let's say hello."

Adam started playing wheelchair basketball six months ago and this was his first game as the captain of the team. The game started well and Adam's team was winning, until the last five minutes, when the other team scored two baskets. This was serious. There were three minutes until the end of the game. Then two minutes...

Suddenly, Maged caught the ball and threw it to Hazem. Hazem quickly moved past two players and threw the ball to Adam. There were 60 seconds to go ... Adam caught the ball and stopped his wheelchair. Thirty seconds .... he put his arms above his head. Twenty seconds ... then he threw the ball high in the air ... and it dropped into the middle of the basketball net ! Everyone cheered loudly !

Adam's team won the match! What a great day !

### III Language

#### Superlatives صيغة التفضيل

- When we want to compare more than two things, we can use the superlative :

• عندما نريد أن نقارن بين أكثر من شيئين، نستخدم صيغة التفضيل.

◀ تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي :

١. يُضاف [ the...+ est ] إلى الصفة القصيرة :

**1**  
Short  
adjectives  
الصفات القصيرة

**the + short adj. + est**

- fast → the fastest - old → the oldest

٢. يُضاف [ the ... + st ] إلى الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ [e] :

- large → the largest - close → the closest

٣. يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف [ the...+est ] إلى

الصفة القصيرة :

- big → the biggest - thin → the thinnest

٤. الصفات المنتهية بحرف [y] مسبوق بحرف ساكن تتحول [y] إلى [i] : [ the... + iest ] :

- happy → the happiest

ex. - The queen was the kindest and best of the elephants.

2

Long  
adjectives

الصفات الطويلة

◀ تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالي :

صفة طويلة. **long adj. + الأقل / الأكثر the most**

- beautiful → the most beautiful الأكثر جمالاً

ex. - Elephants are **the most powerful** animals in India.

◀ هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة [تحفظ كما هي] عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين :

1 Adjective	2 Superlative
bad سيئ	the worst الأسوأ
good جيد	the best الأفضل
little قليل [الكمية]	the least الأقل [كمية]
more + adj. أكثر من	the most + adj. الأكثر



Pop Quiz

on Language

► Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. January is often the ..... month in Egypt.

(Al-Beheira – Bandar Kafr Al-Dawwar 2025)

a. colder      b. cold      c. cold as      d. coldest

2. Hatem is ..... student in the class.

(Alexandria – Montaza 2025)

a. tall      b. the tallest      c. taller than      d. the tall

3. This is the ..... chef at the restaurant.

a. good as      b. better      c. best      d. good

4. It was the ..... vacation.

a. worst      b. worse      c. bad      d. badly

5. What is the ..... difficult sport ?

a. bad      b. more      c. most      d. good

6. Mom is the ..... person in my family.

a. kind      b. kinder      c. kindest      d. most kind

7. What is the ..... animal on land ?

a. fast as      b. fast      c. fastest      d. faster

8. What is the ..... subject in school ?

a. most interesting      b. interesting as  
c. more interesting      d. interesting most

9. Who is the ..... person in your family ?

a. older      b. oldest      c. old      d. as old



## IV Writing

### Writing rule

Use a comma "," before "and, but and so" when the sentences contains two clauses.

استخدم الفاصلة السفلية "," قبل أدوات الربط "but - so - and" عندما تحتوى الجمل على عبارتين.

**ex.** - Adel doesn't play sport, but he likes watching sport on TV.

- Samira wants to be an engineer, and one day she'd like to live and work in Cairo.

- Tarek is keen on swimming, so he goes swimming three times a week.

### Personal profile :

ملف شخصي :

Tips to write a personal profile :

نصائح لكتابة ملف شخصي :

1. Start with a greeting : Hi / Hey  
ا. ابدأ بالتحية مثل : Hi / Hey
2. Give your name, your age, and where you live.  
ب. اعط اسمك، عمرك وأين تعيش.
3. Describe what you look like.  
ج. صف كيف تبدو [مظهرك الخارجى].
4. Tell people about your hobbies :  
د. أخبر الناس عن هواياتك :  
- I'm into ... / I'm keen on ... / My favorite hobby is ...  
- أنا أحب ..... / أنا متحمس ل ..... / هوايتي المفضلة هي .....
5. Ask them to write to you :  
ه. اطلب منهم أن يكتبوا لك :  
- I can't wait to hear from you !  
- لا أطيع الانتظار حتى أسمع منك !  
- Write and tell me !  
- اكتب وأخبرنى !



Pop Quiz

on Writing

► Write a personal profile about a person you admire using these notes to help you.

Name :	Ashraf
Age :	10
School :	El Nasr Language School
Looks like :	tall - short straight hair - black eyes
What are they good at :	reading - football - cooking
What they do on the weekend :	go swimming - visit a museum
Plans for the future Plans :	be a dentist

# Test 19 | on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

• نصوص الاستماع  
• فى نهاية الكتاب.

• تنويه: نموذج اختبار كامل (تدريبات القصة فى اختبار الوحدة)

## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How old is Dalia ?

2. Where does Dalia live ?

3. What color is Dalia's hair ?

4. How many sisters does Dalia have ?

(Menofia - Shiebin El Kom 2025)

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

dentist – photography – countryside – sports – drawing

Nada is keen on walking with her family and friends. The [1] ..... near where she lives is really amazing. She's into [2] ..... . She likes taking photos of all the beautiful things she sees in the countryside. As well this, she's really into [3] ..... . She plays volleyball at her local club, and they have games about once a month. She thinks a lot about the future, and she think she'd like to be a [4] ..... , like her dad.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Many years ago, a herd of elephants lived in India. Their leader, the queen, was the kindest and best of the elephants. During the day, it was very hot, and the elephants liked to swim in the lake.

Near that lake, there was an old village. Nobody lived in the village now, but there were hundreds of mice. Their leader, the king, was kind. The elephants and the mice lived well together.

One day, some hunters were watching the elephants and left nets. The next day, when the elephants went to the lake, they got caught in the nets. They couldn't move, and they roared and roared, making the loudest noise. The mice heard the loud noise and came running. Quickly, they started biting the nets. The elephants could get out !

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "herd" means a ..... of animals.

a. band

b. group

c. kind

d. team



2. The moral of the story is to be .....  
 a. powerful      b. kind      c. happy      d. loud

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. How did the mice save the elephants ?  
 .....

4. Why did the elephants go to the lake ?  
 .....

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

- Mom is the ..... person in my family. (Minya – Maghagha 2025)  
 a. kindest      b. kind      c. kinder      d. kindly
- He is the ..... student in math at my school.  
 a. well      b. best      c. good      d. better
- What do you think ..... dangerous sport is ?  
 a. most      b. best      c. the most      d. more
- We had the ..... rain this year.  
 a. less      b. least      c. small      d. smaller

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. make – your – can – a difference – You – in – community. (Cairo – Al Sahel 2025)  
 .....

2. What – Dina – like – does – look ?  
 .....

**6 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**A short story you have read**

Guiding elements:

- basketball      • wheelchair      • match      • won

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.  
التحدي أجد صعوبة في فهم تفاصيل معينة في النص.  
مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على فهم النص جيداً حيث تكون الإجابة موجودة في النص بشكل مباشر.

### Step 1

#### Read and learn how to answer.

David Aguilar Amphoux is from Spain. When he was 18, he built a prosthetic arm with plastic bricks because he only had one arm. He designed it with a movable elbow and a hand to pick things up. David's dad has written a comic book about David. Everyone thinks this is great because it helps people understand more about disabilities. Prosthetic arms and legs can be difficult to make, but David made his cheaply with plastic bricks. After university, he wants to create cheap prosthetic arms and legs for people.

#### شرح العمل

تقوم المعلومات الواردة فيما من استنتاج معلومات أخرى مثلاً:  
• ديفيد كان له ذراع واحد.  
• صنع ديفيد أطراف صناعية رخيصة الثمن للناس.

- David used ..... bricks to build a prosthetic arm.  
a. metal b. wood c. glass d. plastic
- David's dad has written a comic book about .....  
a. inventions b. his son c. his life d. plastic
- David wants to create cheap prosthetic arms .....  
a. after university b. in 2050 c. at home d. with Aguilar

### Step 2

#### Read and answer the questions.

If we were all the same, life would be boring. In Mrs Mona's class, Asser is different to his friends because he's tall and he has brown eyes. He's good at science, but his friend Seleem is good at geography. Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is straight and he wears glasses. Injy has curly hair and wears braces to help her teeth get straight. The important thing is that we look after each other. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different.

- Seleem is good at .....  
a. geography b. English  
c. science d. math
- Asser has ..... eyes.  
a. blue b. black  
c. gray d. brown
- ..... has straight hair and wears glasses.  
a. Mona b. Seleem  
c. Waleed d. Injy

### اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.



يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.



التحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن [وصف شخص] و [التواصل مع الآخرين] وتجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.



مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها في تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

## Topic

## Describing your friend

## Communication

## Step 1 Review your vocabulary

## Write the meaning :

طويل .....  
مختلف .....  
شعر مجعد .....  
دعامات الأسنان .....  
نظارة .....  
كرسي متحرك .....  
رائع - عظيم .....

رسائل .....  
لغة الإشارة .....  
يتواصل .....  
صعوبات السمع .....  
رسائل بريد الكتروني .....  
صعب .....

## Step 2

## Sentences

## Complete the sentences :

1. We are ..... to each other.
2. He has ..... hair and black eyes.
3. He wears ..... to help him see better.
4. He wears ..... to help his teeth get straight.
5. He is ..... at science.

1. We use many ways to ..... with each other.
2. Talking, writing ..... and phone calls are ways to communicate.
3. Sending ..... is my favorite online way to communicate with friends.
4. Some people use ..... to communicate with people who can't speak.
5. People with hearing ..... can use lip reading to communicate.

## Step 3

## Topics

## Write a personal profile using the sentences :

"Your friend"

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

## Write a paragraph using the sentences :

"Ways to communicate"

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٣٨ جملة).

### 1 A description of a friend

Tom is my best friend<sup>[1]</sup>. He is 12 years old<sup>[2]</sup>. He is from England<sup>[3]</sup>. He is English<sup>[4]</sup>. He is tall and wears glasses<sup>[5]</sup>. He has short brown hair<sup>[6]</sup>. He has got big green eyes<sup>[7]</sup>. He can play football, but he can't play tennis<sup>[8]</sup>. He loves reading and always has a book in his hand<sup>[9]</sup>. His favorite color is yellow<sup>[10]</sup>. His favorite food is pizza<sup>[11]</sup>. He also likes pets<sup>[12]</sup>. He has got a small puppy<sup>[13]</sup>. He is friendly and nice<sup>[14]</sup>. He is always happy<sup>[15]</sup>.

### 2 A personal profile

Hi everybody!

I'm Malek and I'm eleven<sup>[16]</sup>. I live in Cairo and I go to El Salam School<sup>[17]</sup>. I'm in grade 6<sup>[18]</sup>. My best friends at school are Omar and Ali<sup>[19]</sup>. We're in the same class<sup>[20]</sup>. I have short dark hair and I wear glasses<sup>[21]</sup>. I have a brother, Anas, and a sister, Malak<sup>[22]</sup>. I'm really into sports<sup>[23]</sup>. I love watching football games on TV with my dad<sup>[24]</sup>. On the weekend, I often meet my friends in the park to play basketball<sup>[25]</sup>. Omar records the most points, so everybody wants him to be in their team<sup>[26]</sup>. I want to be an engineer<sup>[27]</sup>. Write and tell me about yourself<sup>[28]</sup>.

### 3 Communicating with people with hearing difficulties

From	hend@gmail.com
To	heba@gmail.com
Subject	communicating with people with hearing difficulties

Hi Heba,

How are you<sup>[29]</sup>? Let me tell you about the best ways to communicate with people with hearing difficulties<sup>[30]</sup>. First of all, if someone doesn't understand you from people with hearing difficulties, repeat what you said differently<sup>[31]</sup>. Use American sign language<sup>[32]</sup>. For example, you can put your hand on your forehead and move it away to say "Hello"<sup>[33]</sup>. If there is more than one person in a conversation take turns to talk<sup>[34]</sup>. Make sure you are facing the person you are talking to and speak clearly<sup>[35]</sup>. Use pen on paper or whiteboards to write what you want to say<sup>[36]</sup>. In a noisy place, move to a quieter one if possible<sup>[37]</sup>. See you soon<sup>[38]</sup>.

Lots of love,  
Hend





# Review on Unit 4

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الرابعة فى ورقة واحدة

## Vocabulary

glasses	نظارة	prosthetic arm	ذراع اصطناعية	herd	قطيع
braces	تقويم الأسنان	kindness	عطف	hunter	صياد
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	advertisement	إعلان	powerful	قوى
disability	عجز - إعاقة	proud	فخور	leader	قائد
communicate	يتواصل	movable elbow	كوع متحرك	respect	يحترم
sign language	لغة الإشارة	confident	واثق	route	طريق

## Language

### 1 Reported questions الأسئلة فى الكلام غير المباشر

**A** Yes / No question → السؤال بـ "هل"

- ex. - Ashraf said, "Does he have any pets ?"  
- Ashraf **asked** if he **had** any pets.

**B** Wh-question → السؤال بكلمة استفهام

- ex. - "What are you doing ?" Adam said.  
- Adam **asked** what I **was doing**.

### 2 Superlatives صيغة التفضيل

**A** Short adjectives → the + صفة قصيرة + est

- ex. - The giraffe is **the tallest** animal in the world.

**B** Long adjectives → the most / least + صفة طويلة

- ex. - Butterflies are **the most beautiful** creatures.  
- Today is **the best** day at school.

# Test 20 | on Unit 4

• نصوص الاستماع  
في نهاية الكتاب.  
• التقييمات الشهرية  
في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Why does Miss Rana want them to get into groups ?

2. What is the poster about ?

3. Where do animals live ?

4. How does Miss Rana like the posters ?

## 2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

movie – speaking – newspaper – opinion – have

**Sherif** : Mom, I'd really like to understand English better !

**Mom** : What do you think about [1] ..... English all day with me ?

**Sherif** : I don't know, Mom. In my [2] ....., it might be difficult.

**Mom** : What about speaking English while we [3] ..... our lunch then ?

**Sherif** : To me, that's a much better idea !

**Mom** : Great ! What about watching an English [4] ..... this evening ?

**Sherif** : I think that could work well. There's a fantastic movie I'd like to see. Thanks, Mom !

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hi everybody !

How are things ? My name's Dalia. I'm eleven, and I live in Alexandria. I go to Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends. I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces. I have an older brother and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family ! I'm **keen on** walking with my family and friends, and the countryside near where I live is really amazing. I'm into photography. I like taking photos of all the beautiful things I see in the countryside. As well as this, I'm really into sports. I play volleyball at my local club, and we have games about once a month.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is mainly about " ....." .

a. Alexandria

b. Alex Modern School

c. Sports

d. Dalia



2. The underlined expression "keen on" means .....  
 a. far from                      b. different to                      c. interested in                      d. worried about

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. What does Dalia look like ?  
 .....

4. Why do they call Dalia the baby of the family ?  
 .....

• **4 The Reader**

**A. Read and write YES or NO.**

1. There're wind chimes in the sensory garden. [ ..... ]  
 2. Asser's parents showed him a large information board. [ ..... ]

**B. Read and answer the questions.**

1. Where did Asser see his parents ?  
 .....

2. What was Asser worried that his parents might forget ?  
 .....

• **5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. My dad asked what time I ..... from school.  
 a. arrives                      b. arrive                      c. arrived                      d. arriving
2. What is the ..... sport ?  
 a. more dangerous                      b. most dangerous  
 c. dangerous than                      d. dangerous as
3. He used the ..... material to make a beautiful invention.  
 a. cheap                      b. cheaper                      c. cheapest                      d. cheaper than
4. She asked him if he ..... been to France before.  
 a. having                      b. has                      c. have                      d. had

• **6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. saved - from - The mice - the hunter - elephants - the.  
 .....

2. to communicate - is - What - best - way - the ?  
 .....

• **7 Write a personal profile of SEVENTY (70) words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**Guiding elements:**

- Name .....
- Your hobbies .....
- What do you look like ? .....
- What are your future plans ? .....

### 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. What is Ramez's favorite hobby ?

2. Where did Ramez's club go for a walk ?

3. Who pointed to the object ?

4. How many photos could they take to an object ?

(Qena – Deshna 2024)

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

book – disabilities – prosthetic – paint – elbow

David is from Spain. When he was eighteen years old, he built a [1] ..... arm with plastic bricks because he had only one arm. He designed it with a movable [2] ..... and a hand to pick things up. David's dad has written a comic [3] ..... about David. Everyone thinks it is great because it helps people understand more about [4] ..... .

(Cairo - Al-Tabin 2024)

### 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

All people are different, but they are all important. Some people are short and some are tall. My friend Noha uses a wheelchair because she can't walk well. Amira has a hearing aid because she has problems with hearing. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they are different. "Our school is for everyone. We are all equally important," said Mrs Dooda." But what should we do if we see someone being mean at school ?" asked Injy. "I saw someone being unkind to Tarek the other day because he forgot his glasses, and so he couldn't see well". "You should always come and tell me or another teacher," said Mrs Mona. "Here at the school we should all help each other".

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "mean" means .....

a. kind                      b. good                      c. unkind                      d. nice

2. Noha uses a ..... because she can't walk.

a. car                      b. wheelchair                      c. bike                      d. wheel

#### B. Answer the following questions.

3. What happened to Tarek when he forgot his glasses ?

(Minya - Mallawi 2024)



4. What should you do if you see someone being mean at school ?

• **4 The Reader**

**A. Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Asser plays the guitar in the school concert.

(Alexandria - West Alexandria 2024) [ ..... ]

2. Shady is Asser's cousin.

(Dakahlia - West of Mansoura 2025) [ ..... ]

**B. Read and answer the questions.**

1. What was Asser's parents' secret ?

(Monofia - Shebin El Koom 2024)

2. How did Asser feel about the concert at the end of the story ? (Damietta 2024)

• **5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Lake Nasser is the ..... lake in Egypt.

(Kafir El-Sheikh - English supervision 2025)

a. big

b. bigger

c. small

d. biggest

2. My mom asked me what time ..... my homework. (Sohag - Tema 2025)

a. do I do

b. did I

c. I did

d. I do

3. Our teacher asked ..... we could all see the whiteboard.

(Damietta - El Zarqa 2024)

a. that

b. to

c. if

d. not to

4. It was the ..... vacation.

(Beheira - Rosetta 2024)

a. worst

b. worse

c. bad

d. badly

• **6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. is - and - glasses - wears - Hany - tall .

(Minya - Deir Moawas 2025)

2. about - do - What - think - you - stories ?

(Cairo - Helwan 2024)

• **7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**A short description of a friend**

**Guiding elements:**

(Cairo - Al Sahel / Minya - Samalut 2024)

• tall

• eyes

• glasses

• hair

# General Revision

on Units 3 & 4

## I Vocabulary

### Unit 3

green roofs	اسقف خضراء	neat	مرتب	recycling	إعادة التدوير
sleds	زلجات	kindergarten	روضة أطفال	encourage	يشجع
reindeer	حيوان الرنة	floods	فيضانات	collapse	ينهار
timetable	جدول مواعيد	tournament	دورة رياضية	steep	شديد الانحدار
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	art club	نادي الفنون	principal	مدير المدرسة - مسئول
flexible	مرن	palace	قصر	court	محكمة
scribe	كاتب	repair	يصلح	passionate	شغوف
competition	مسابقة	demonstration	إيضاح - عرض	schedule	جدول

### Unit 4

braces	تقويم الاسنان	design	يصمم - تصميم	respect	يحترم
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	university	جامعة	computing	استعمال الحاسبات
hearing aid	سماعة الاذن	confident	واثق	member	عضو
disability	عجز - إعاقة	advertisement	اعلان	crawl	يزحف
sign language	لغة الإشارة	herd	قطيع	hunter	صياد
text messages	رسائل نصية	route	طريق	leader	قائد

## II Language

### Unit 3

#### 1 Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

● ● ● ●  
always

● ● ● ○  
usually

● ● ○ ○  
often

● ○ ○ ○  
sometimes

○ ○ ○ ○  
never

ex. - He **is always** busy on weekends.

- We **usually wear** the school uniform.

(تأتي بعد verb to be)

(تأتي قبل الفعل الاساسي)



## 2 Using **make me + adj.** صفة

► **Formation :** التكوين

**Subject + make[s] + object + adjective** صفة

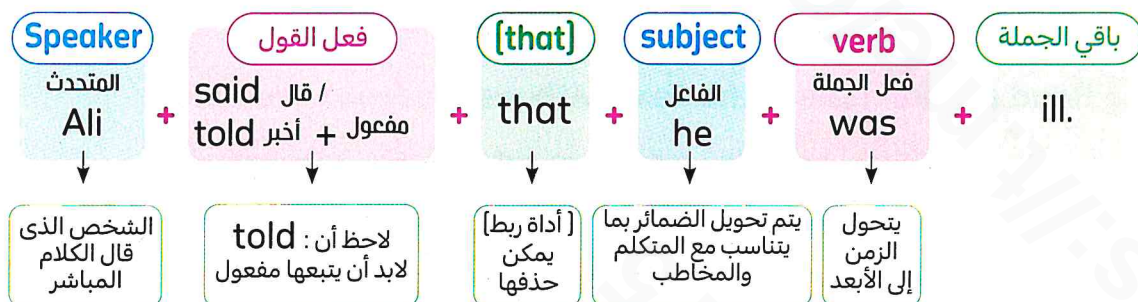
► **Usage :** الاستخدام

استخدم [ **make me** ] للحديث عن شعورك بسبب شيء ما أو شخص ما.

**ex.** - Swimming **makes me healthy**.

## 3 **Reported Speech** الكلام غير المباشر

**Statement :** الجملة الخبرية



"I like making jewelry," said Fares. → Fares said **he liked** making jewelry.

## Unit 4

**Superlative** صيغة التفضيل

1

**Short  
adjectives**

الصفات القصيرة

**the + short adj. + est**

**ex.** - The whale is **the biggest** sea animal.

2

**Long  
adjectives**

الصفات الطويلة

**the most الأكثر / least الأقل + long adj.** صفة طويلة

**ex.** - Fruits are **the most delicious** food for me.



# Test 22 | on Units 3 & 4

• نصوص الاستماع  
في نهاية الكتاب.

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقاً لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

## 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. When do you go to school ?

.....

2. What do you have to wear at school ?

.....

3. Who do you get the bus with ?

.....

4. Where do you bring lunch from ?

.....

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

hits - sounds - communicate - talk - meowing

Today our teacher invited an interesting person called Mr Kamal to come and [1] ..... to us in class. Mr Kamal told us the best ways to [2] ..... with people who have hearing problems. He asked us what [3] ..... we heard every day. We had a lot of ideas. My friend said he heard other people talking and I said I heard our cat [4] ..... in the morning!

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There was a smart fox in the woods. He saw a bird on a tree with cheese. He wanted the cheese, so he made a plan. He said to the bird, "Hi, pretty bird. You look so nice and shiny. I wonder how is your sound. Can you sing for me ?" The bird liked the fox's words. It wanted to show its sound, so it opened its mouth to sing. When it did, the cheese fell out. The fox got the cheese and ran away. He said to the bird, "Thanks for the cheese and the sound. Your sound is good, but you are not clever." The bird saw its mistake and felt bad. It learned something that day : do not believe nice words.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The moral of the story is not to believe ..... words.

a. ugly

b. bad

c. fast

d. nice

2. The underlined word "smart" means .....

a. nice

b. bad

c. clever

d. slow



**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. How did the fox get the cheese ?

4. How did the bird feel at the end of the story ?

**4 The Reader**

**A. Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Asser went to the park with Shady and Shady's dad. [ ..... ]

2. The sensory garden is for Mayar only. [ ..... ]

**B. Read and answer the questions.**

1. What was Asser's parents' secret ?

2. Where did Shady meet Asser ?

**5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. It's ..... cold in summer in Egypt.

a. always

b. often

c. usually

d. never

2. I think Burj Khalifa is ..... building in the world.

a. taller

b. tall

c. tallest

d. the tallest

3. Art ..... me relaxed and happy.

a. make

b. makes

c. making

d. to make

4. He ..... helpful, so everyone loves him.

a. are always

b. always is

c. is always

d. always are

**6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. green - Why - good - are - for - roofs - the environment ?

2. hair - blue - She - straight - and - has - eyes.

**7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**"Studying the past"**

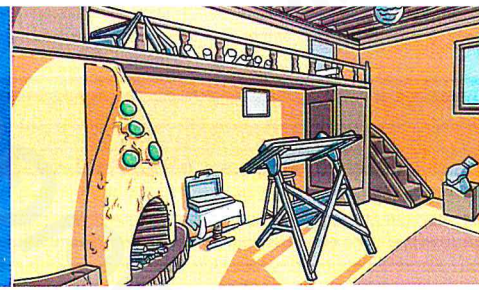
Guiding elements:

• study

• history

• society

• stories



★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

• Vocabulary

architect	مهندس معماري	cool	معتدل الحرارة
police officer	ضابط شرطة	close to	قريب من
comfortable	مريح	die	يموت
character	شخصية	local	محلي
mud bricks	قوالب الطوب الطيني	adult	بالغ [راشد]
climate	مناخ	architecture	هندسة / طراز معماري
work place	ورشة عمل	university	الجامعة
encourage	يشجع	low-cost	منخفض التكلفة
drawing	الرسم	domed roofs	اسقف على شكل قبة
painting	الرسم بالالوان	public	عام
attractive	جذاب	award	جائزة
features	سمات	thick walls	حوائط سميكة

• Definitions تعريفات

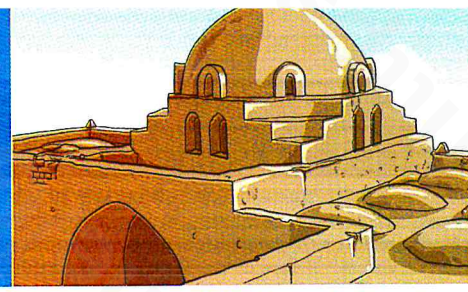
Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
public	something that everybody in the community can see or use
feature	an important part of something that you notice because it seems important or interesting
domed	something which has a round shape
architecture	designing and making buildings
mud brick	a type of building material made of earth
attractive	nice and pleasant to look at



### Main points on Hassan Fathy's biography

1. Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian architect who was born in Alexandria in 1900.  
حسن فتحى هو مهندس مصرى شهير ولد فى الاسكندرية عام ١٩٠٠.
2. As he was a child, he was creative and he loved drawing and painting.  
عندما كان طفلاً، كان مبدعاً، فكان يحب الرسم والتلوين.
3. He studied architecture at Cairo University and later, worked as an architect.  
درس الهندسة المعمارية فى جامعة القاهرة ولاحقاً عمل كمهندس معمارى.
4. Fathy became famous for building comfortable, attractive houses using low-cost materials.  
اصبح فتحى مشهور ببناء منازل مريحة وجذابة باستخدام مواد خام منخفضة التكلفة.
5. His houses have Egyptian features for example domed roofs and mud bricks.  
تتميز المنازل التى يصممها بالسّمات المصرية على سبيل المثال الاسقف المقببة [ذات القبة] والطوب الطينى.
6. New Gourni was Fathy's first big project that began in 1940s.  
"نيوجورنا" هو أول وأكبر مشروع قام به فتحى والذى بدأ فى فترة الأربعينات.
7. Fathy built new homes in the traditional style.  
قام فتحى ببناء منازل جديدة على الطراز التقليدى.
8. Fathy built other public buildings, for example, schools, for Egypt's Ministry of Education.  
بنى فتحى مباني أخرى عامة، على سبيل المثال المدارس لوزارة التربية والتعليم المصرية.
9. Today, we can see Hassan Fathy's work is important for three reasons :  
يمكننا اليوم أن نرى أهمية أعمال حسن فتحى لثلاثة أسباب :
  - a. He understood that traditional architecture was great.  
ادرك أن الهندسة المعمارية التقليدية كانت رائعة.
  - b. The houses he built are very comfortable for people.  
المنازل التى قام ببنائها مريحة جداً للناس.
  - c. He knew it is important to build for the local climate.  
ادرك أنه من الهام أن يبني بناء مناسب للمناخ المحلى.
10. His houses have high domed roofs and thick mud walls to keep them cool.  
تتميز منازلهم بأسقف مقببة عالية وجدران من القوالب الطينية سمكية لإبقائها باردة.

# New Baris



★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

## Vocabulary

planning	تخطيط	position	موقع
Kharga	صحراء "الخارجة"	courtyard	فناء [ساحة]
rise	ترتفع	provide	يبد / يزود
secondly	ثانيًا	community	مجتمع
well	بئر	social center	مركز اجتماعي
hold	يحمل [يمسك]	design	يصمم / تصميم
domed roofs	الاسطح المقببة [ذات قبة]	temperature	درجة الحرارة
sadly	من المحزن	degree	درجة
create	ينشأ	luckily	لحسن الحظ
respect	يحترم	wind catchers	مصائد الرياح
organization	منظمة	shade	ظل
challenges	تحديات [صعوبات]	shaded seating area	منطقة للجلوس مظلة
firstly	أولًا	building	مبنى
builder	بنا	unfinished	لم تكتمل
mud brick	طوب لين	villa	فيلا

## Main points on New Baris

1. The ODD organization asked Hassan Fathy to design a village in the desert at Kharga for the farmers.  
طلبت منظمة ODD من "حسن فتحي" أن يصمم قرية للفلاحين في صحراء الخارجة.
2. It was important to keep the village cool because the temperature sometimes rose to 50 degrees.  
كان من الضروري أن تحتفظ القرية بدرجة حرارة معتدلة لان في بعض الأوقات كانت تصل درجة الحرارة إلى 50 درجة مئوية.
3. They needed to find water for farmers' crops and families before building the new houses.  
كانوا في حاجة إلى توفير المياه لمحاصيل الفلاحين وعائلاتهم قبل البدء في بناء المنازل الجديدة.
4. To keep the village houses cool, they were made of mud bricks.  
صنعت منازل القرية من الطوب اللين لكي يحتفظوا بدرجة الحرارة المعتدلة بها.



5. The village also had windcatchers - they are tall buildings which hold hot air and cool it down.  
وكان بالقرية أيضًا مصائد رياح وهي عبارة عن مباني مرتفعة تحتفظ بالهواء الساخن وتخفف درجة حرارته.
6. Fathy designed the area so that the buildings gave shade to people in the streets.  
صمم حسن فتحي المنطقة بحيث أن تعطي المباني ظلًا للناس في الشوارع.
7. He added a taktabosh courtyard which provided a shaded seating area outside.  
أضاف حسن فتحي فناء تكتابوش والذي وفر للناس منطقة مظلة للجلوس بالخارج.
8. Hassan Fathy added the suk and other buildings. He believed it was important to create communities, not just houses.  
أضاف حسن فتحي السوق ومباني أخرى لأنه كان يؤمن بأنه من المهم أن ينشئ مجتمعات وليس فقط منازل.
9. Sadly, New Baris is unfinished. Work on it stopped in 1967.  
للأسف لم يتم الانتهاء من العمل عليها، فقد توقف العمل عام ١٩٦٧.
10. You can see and respect Hassan Fathy's designs, today.  
ومازلنا حتى اليوم نرى ونحترم تصميمات حسن فتحي.

## General Exercises

## on Hassan Fathy's biography

### Mini Test 1

#### A Read and write Yes or No.

1. Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian athlete. [ ..... ]
2. Fathy designed a whole community, not just houses. [ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. Why do you like Hassan Fathy's buildings ?  
.....
2. Where did Hassan Fathy need to build a village ?  
.....

### Mini Test 2

#### A Read and write Yes or No.

1. Fathy's houses have Egyptian features. [ ..... ]
2. Today, there isn't any of Hassan Fathy's work. [ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did Hassan Fathy study at Cairo university ?  
.....
2. What were the village houses made of ?  
.....



Fiction Reader  
A Wonderful Surprise  
مفاجأة رائعة





# I Vocabulary

## • The beginning

SB Pages [88 - 93]

put away	يضع الشيء في مكانه	busy	مشغول
neatly	بصورة منظمة / بدقة	daughter	ابنة
look out of	ينظر من خلال	apron	مريلة [مئزر]
surprise	مفاجأة	pick up	يلتقط
cookies	كعك محلي	hug	يحتضن
guitar	جيتار	come out	يخرج
gate	بوابة	braille	طريقة [برايل] للمكفوفين
smile	يبتسم	muddy	موجل / طيفي
wave	يلوح / يشاور	wonderful	رائع

## • The middle

SB Pages [94 - 98]

audiobook	كتاب صوتي / مسموع	park	حديقة
parents	الوالدين	sit down	يجلس
yard	ساحة / فناء	remember	يتذكر
water bottle	زجاجة مياه	shovel	مجرفة / جاروف
thick bushes	شجيرات كثيفة	worried	قلق
concert	حفلة موسيقى	Yes, of course.	نعم بالطبع.
plan	خطة / يخطط	have fun	يستمتع
covered in mud	مغطى بالطين	garage	جراج

## • The end

SB Pages [99 - 103]

dig	يحفر	wind chimes	اجراس الرياح
surprised	مندهش	wheelchair	كرسي متحرك
sensory garden	الحديقة الحسية	reply	يرد - رد
builders	عمال بناء	spade	مجرفة - جاروف
fountain	نافورة	playground	ملعب
invite	يدعو	touch	يلمس
laugh	يضحك	wide paths	ممرات واسعة
equipment	معدات	hang	يعلق
neighborhood	حي	secret	سر

• **Study these definitions** ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
<b>audiobook</b>	An audiobook is a book which you listen to on a device. The words are spoken, not written down. الكتاب الصوتي هو كتاب تستمع إليه على جهاز. وتكون الكلمات منطوقة وغير مدونة.
<b>muddy</b>	When soil is wet, it becomes mud. When something is muddy, it has a lot of mud on it. عندما تكون التربة مبللة، تتحول إلى طين. عندما يكون الشيء طيني، هذا يعني أنه يوجد الكثير من الطين عليه [به].
<b>braille</b>	Braille is a way of writing words for people who can't see well. You touch the braille with your fingers to read it. برايل هي طريقة لكتابة الكلمات لهؤلاء الذين لا يمكنهم الرؤية جيدًا. يمكنك أن تلمس الحروف المكتوبة بطريقة برايل بأصابعك لكي تقرأها.
<b>secret</b>	A secret is something that you don't tell anybody, or want anybody to find out. السر هو شيء ما لا تريد أن تخبر به أحدًا ولا تريد أن يكتشفه أحدًا.
<b>bush</b>	A bush is a short tree with a lot of branches and leaves. الشجيرة هي شجرة قصيرة بها الكثير من الفروع والأوراق.
<b>shovel</b>	A shovel is a tool for digging. الجاروف هو أداة للحفر.
<b>garage</b>	A garage is the room of the home where people keep their cars. الجراج هو حجرة ملحقة بالمنزل بها يحفظ [يضع] الناس سياراتهم.
<b>trunk</b>	A trunk is the area at the back of a car. You can put bags or large objects in it. صندوق السيارة هي المنطقة الخلفية من السيارة. يمكنك وضع الحقائب والأشياء الكبيرة بها.
<b>hug</b>	You hug somebody when you put your arms around them. We hug a person to show we care. عندما تحضن أحدًا فأنت تضع ذراعيك حوله. نحن نحض الأشخاص لنظهر مدى اهتمامنا بهم.
<b>wind chime</b>	A wind chime is a decoration which makes a nice sound in the wind. الجرس الهوائي هو ديكور [زينه] حيث تصنع صوت لطيف عندما تحركها الرياح.



## II Main points on the Story

### 1 The beginning

#### Asser and Mayar are going to spend the day with their grandma.

- At the end of the school day, Asser put his pens and pencils away neatly.  
في نهاية اليوم الدراسي، وضع آسر اقلامه الجاف والرصاص في أماكنها بطريقة منظمة.
- Asser's grandma was waiting at the school gates.  
كانت جدة آسر تنتظر خارج بوابات المدرسة.
- Asser smiled and waved at his grandma then hugged her.  
ابتسم آسر ولوح بيده إلى جدته ثم حضنها.
- Grandma's coming at school was a nice surprise.  
مجيء الجدة إلى المدرسة كانت مفاجأة لطيفة.
- Mayar is Asser's sister.  
ميّار هي اخت آسر.
- Mayar was carrying a book and looked very happy.  
كانت ميّار تحمل كتابًا وتبدو سعيدة جدًا.
- Mrs Azza is Mayar's teacher.  
الأستاذة عزة هي معلمة ميّار.
- Mrs Azza told the grandma that Mayar's book had words in braille.  
أخبرت الأستاذة عزة الجدة أن كتاب ميّار به كلمات بطريقة برايل.
- Asser's parents were busy.  
والداي آسر كانا مشغولان.
- Asser and Mayar are going to Grandma's house and she offered to make cookies for them.  
سيذهب آسر وميّار إلى منزل الجدة وعرضت عليهم أن تصنع لهم كعك محلي.
- The children stayed at Grandma's house until the evening.  
مكثوا الأطفال في منزل الجدة حتى المساء.
- Mom and Dad were happy to see Mayar's new book.  
كانا الام والاب سعداء لرؤية كتاب ميّار الجديد.
- Mom and Dad learned braille when Mayar was a baby.  
تعلم الام والاب طريقة برايل عندما كانت ميّار طفلة رضيعة.
- The family all got in the car to go home.  
ركب جميع أفراد الأسرة السيارة للعودة للمنزل.
- Asser saw his dad's and mom's muddy boots when he opened the car trunk.  
رأى آسر أحذية والده ووالدته متسخة بالوحل عندما فتح صندوق السيارة.
- Mom told Asser not to forget his guitar for music club.  
أخبرت الام آسر ألا ينسى الجيتار الخاص به من أجل حصة الموسيقى.
- Mom told Mayar to remember her apron for pottery classes.  
أخبرت الام ميّار أن تتذكر المربلة [المئزر] الخاصة بحصة صناعة الفخار.
- Asser and Mayar are going to go to Grandma's house once again.  
آسر وميّار سيذهبوا إلى بيت الجدة مرة أخرى.

### Asser is getting ready for the concert.

- Mayar and her mom chose an audiobook to listen to.  
اختارت ميار ووالدتها كتاب صوتي ليستمعوا إليه.
- Asser was thinking about his school concert next week.  
كان آسر يفكر في الحفلة المدرسية الموسيقية المقررة في الأسبوع المقبل.
- Asser wanted his parents to come and watch him in his school concert.  
كان آسر يود أن يأتي والديه إلى الحفلة الموسيقية ليشاهدوه.
- Asser's mom looked tired so he decided to ask her about the concert later.  
كانت والدته آسر تبدو متعبة، لذا قرر آسر أن يسأل والدته عن الحفلة الموسيقية في وقت لاحق.
- On the weekend, Salma [the mom] planned to take the children to Grandma's house at the weekend.  
خططت سلمى [الأم] أن تأخذ أطفالها إلى بيت الجدة في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.
- Asser went to the garage to get his football.  
ذهب آسر إلى الجراج ليأخذ كرة القدم الخاصة به.
- Asser saw his dad's shovel outside the garage. The shovel was covered in mud.  
رأى آسر جاروف والده خارج الجراج. كان الجاروف مغطى بالطين.
- The muddy shovel was strange because there was nothing different in the yard.  
كان الجاروف المغطى بالطين امر غريب بالنسبة لآسر لأن لم يكن هناك شيء مختلف في الساحة.
- Asser and Mayar went to their Grandma's house every day that week.  
ذهب آسر و ميار إلى منزل جدتهم كل يوم في هذا الأسبوع.
- Asser was worried about the concert.  
كان آسر قلق بشأن الحفلة الموسيقية.
- Asser practiced his song a lot because he wanted the concert to go well.  
تمرن آسر على اغنيته كثيرًا لأنه كان يريد أن تسير الحفلة الموسيقية على أكمل وجه.
- In Grandma's yard, Asser was playing while Mayar listened to an audiobook.  
في ساحة منزل الجدة بينما كان يلعب آسر، كانت تستمع ميار إلى كتاب صوتي.
- Shady came by Grandma's house and spoke to Asser.  
مر شادي إلى منزل الجدة وتحدث إلى آسر.
- Asser's friend, Shady invited him to go the park with him and his dad.  
قام شادي صديق آسر بدعوته إلى الحديقة معه ومع والده.
- Asser asked his Grandma before going with Shady to the park.  
استأذن آسر جدته قبل الذهاب إلى الحديقة مع شادي.
- Grandma agreed and asked Asser to take his bottle.  
وافقت الجدة وطلبت من آسر أن يأخذ زجاجة.



### The sensory garden

- Asser and Shady had fun in the park. They sat down by thick bushes when they got tired. استمتع أسر وشادي في الحديقة. جلسوا بجانب الشجيرات الكثيفة عندما تعبوا.
- They drank some water and ate some fruit. تناول أسر وشادي بعض المياه والفاكهة.
- While Asser and Shady were sitting quietly, they heard Asser's parents talking. عندما كان أسر وشادي يجلسون بهدوء في الحديقة، استمعوا إلى صوت والداي أسر يتحدثون.
- Asser's parents were digging on the other side of the park. على الجانب الآخر من الحديقة كان والداي أسر يقومون بالحفر.
- When Asser's parents saw them, they looked surprised. كان والداي أسر مندهشين عندما شاهدوا شادي وآسر.
- Asser looked down and saw his dad's muddy boots. نظر أسر إلى الأسفل فرأى حذاء والده المملوء بالطين.
- The parents showed Asser and Shady a large information board with a plan on it. قام الوالدين بعرض لوحة معلومات كبيرة وعليها خطة لآسر وشادي.
- The plan showed lots of exciting new play equipment. وكانت هذه الخطة بها معدات لعب جديدة ومثيرة.
- The parents were making a playground with a sensory garden. وكان الوالدين يقومون بعمل ملعب بحديقة حسية.
- A sensory garden is a place where you can hear, see, and touch all kinds of interesting things. الحديقة الحسية هي المكان الذي تستطيع فيه أن تسمع، ترى وتلمس كل أنواع الأشياء الشيقة.
- There's a fountain, and wind chimes for relaxing sounds. الحديقة الحسية بها نافورة وإجراس هوائية للأصوات المريحة.
- There will be wide paths, so people in wheelchairs can enjoy the garden. سيكون هناك طرق واسعة والتي تمكن الأشخاص على الكراسي المتحركة من الاستمتاع بالحديقة.
- Asser's parents didn't tell him about the sensory garden because it's a surprise. لم يخبر الوالدين أسر بالحديقة الحسية لأنها كانت مفاجأة.
- The builders are putting in the big equipment next week. سيقوم البناء بتثبيت المعدات الكبيرة الأسبوع القادم.
- Asser and Shady started helping. It was hard work. بدأ أسر وشادي بالمساعدة. لقد كان العمل شاق.
- The sensory garden will open next week. ستفتتح الحديقة الحسية الأسبوع المقبل.
- Asser enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden. استمتع أسر وهو يعرض لميار ما قام به حول الحديقة الحسية.
- The fountain is Mayar's favorite thing in the park. كانت النافورة هي الشيء المفضل لميار في الحديقة.
- Mom told Asser that they hadn't forgotten his concert. أخبرت الأم أسر انهم لم ينسوا الحفل الموسيقي الخاص به.

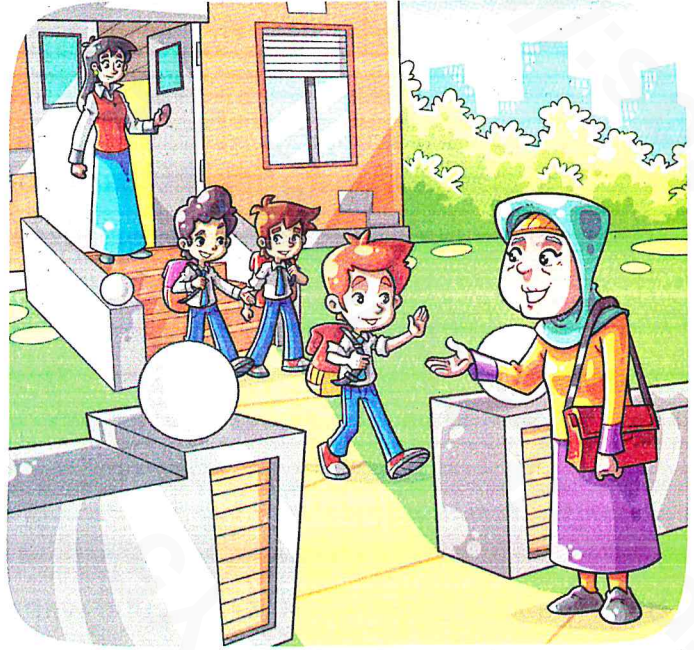


## 1

The beginning بداية القصة

It was the end of the school day, and Asser put his pens and pencils away neatly. He looked out of the classroom window for his mom, but he couldn't see her.

Mrs Eman, his teacher, took the children outside. Then Asser saw his grandma waiting at the school gates. He smiled and waved at her.



Asser loved it when his grandma picked him up, and he hugged her.

"What a nice surprise! I didn't know you were coming today" he said.

"Your mom is busy, so I'm here today," she smiled. "Now, where's your sister?"

They saw Mayar come out of her classroom. She was with her friends, and she was carrying a book. She looked very happy.

Mayar's teacher, Mrs Azza, came to talk to Grandma.



Mrs Azza said, "Mayar has a new book. It has words that you can read to her. It also has words in braille that she can read herself".

"Thank you!" said Grandma. "We can read this together this evening".

"Are we going to your house today, Grandma?" asked Mayar.

"Yes, we are. Your mom and dad are busy. Should we make cookies?"

"Yes, please!" said Asser and Mayar.



The children stayed at Grandma's house until the evening. Their parents arrived after dinner.

"Thanks for having the children, Mom," said their mom.

"You're welcome, Salma! I love having them here!" replied Grandma.

"Did you have a good time with Grandma today?" asked their mom.

"Yes, of course! And look at my new book from school!" said Mayar.

"It's great. Let's read it when we get home," said their dad.

Their mom and dad were happy to see Mayar's new book. When Mayar was a baby, her mom and dad learned braille. They helped her to read. Now, they love reading with their daughter in the evenings.

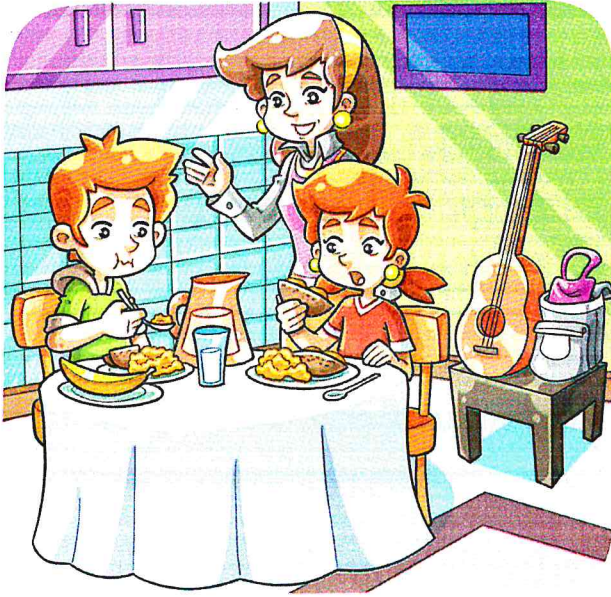
The family all got in the car to go home. As Asser went to put the school bags in the open trunk, he noticed something strange. He saw his mom and dad's boots there, and they were muddy.

"Their boots are really muddy. Have Mom and Dad been to a farm?" thought Asser.

Asser then got into the car, and they all went home.







The next morning, at breakfast, the children's mom said, "Grandma will pick you up from school again today".

"Are you going to be home late, Mom?" asked Asser.

"Yes, I'm very busy this week. I'll pick you up from Grandma's at seven o'clock".

"OK" said Asser.

"It's music club today, so don't forget your guitar, Asser. Mayar, you have pottery classes at lunchtime, so remember your apron".

## Questions & Answers

on the beginning

تدريبات مجاب عنها مع التوضيح اعدت خصيصًا لتمكن الطالب من التعامل بسهولة مع تدريبات القصة

### 1. Read and write YES or NO.

Yes

1. Mrs Eman is Asser's teacher.	Yes
2. Grandma was waiting at the school gates.	Yes
3. Asser loved when his Grandma picked him up.	Yes
4. Mayar was carrying a book.	Yes
5. Mayar's parents learned braille when she was a baby.	Yes
6. Asser's mom told him not to forget his guitar.	Yes

★ تم وضع سبب الإجابة للتدريب فقط.

### 2. Read and write YES or NO.

No

Correction

1. Mrs <u>Azza</u> is Asser's teacher.	No	Eman
2. <u>Asser's</u> book has words in braille.	No	Mayar's
3. Children made <u>cakes</u> with Grandma.	No	cookies
4. Mayar has <u>music</u> club.	No	pottery
5. Asser needs to remember his <u>apron</u> .	No	guitar
6. Asser found his parent's <u>bags</u> in the car.	No	boots



### 3. Read and answer the questions.

### Answers

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Who picked children from school ?                  | Grandma.                                |
| 2. Why couldn't the children's parents pick them up ? | Because they were busy.                 |
| 3. What was Mayar carrying ?                          | A book.                                 |
| 4. When did Mayar's parents learn braille ?           | When she was a baby.                    |
| 5. What did Asser see in the car trunk ?              | His parents' boots but they were muddy. |
| 6. What should Mayar take for her pottery classes ?   | An apron                                |

## General Exercises

### on the beginning of the story

1

### El-Moasser exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

#### Mini Test

1

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. When Asser saw Grandma, he smiled and hugged her. [.....]
2. Mayar has dance class in the evening. [.....]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. Where was Grandma waiting for Asser and Mayar ?  
.....

2. Who was Mrs Azza ?  
.....

#### Mini Test

2

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser saw his parents' boots in the car trunk. [.....]
2. Mom and dad's boots were clean. [.....]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. Why did Grandma come to pick Asser and Mayar up ?  
.....

2. What did Grandma offer to make for Asser and Mayar ?  
.....

### Mini Test

3

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser's grandma was waiting at the club gates.
2. Mayar's book had words in braille.

[ ..... ]  
[ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did Mayar have to read ?  
.....
2. What did Asser see when he opened the car trunk ?  
.....

### Mini Test

4

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Mayar was carrying a book and looked happy.
2. Mom and Dad learned braille when Mayar was a baby.

[ ..... ]  
[ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did Mrs Azza give Mayar ?  
.....
2. Who was waiting for the children at the school gates ?  
.....

### Mini Test

5

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser saw his parents' boots in the car trunk.
2. Mayar has pottery classes at lunchtime.

[ ..... ]  
[ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. Where did grandma take Asser and Mayar ?  
.....
2. What did Mayar's parents learn when she was baby ?  
.....

### Mini Test

6

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Mayar has a new bike.
2. Asser didn't hug his grandma when he saw her.

[ ..... ]  
[ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. Where did Asser put the school bags ?  
.....
2. What instrument did Asser play ?  
.....



2

## Previous Exams

تدريبات من الامتحانات السابقة

## Mini Test

1

**A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Mrs Eman, Asser's teacher, took the children outside. [ ..... ]
2. When Mayar was a baby, her mom didn't learn Braille. [ ..... ]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. Who was waiting for the children at the school gates ?  
.....
2. How were their parents' boots ?  
.....

[Giza - 6<sup>th</sup> October 2025]

## Mini Test

2

**A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Mrs Eman is Asser's teacher. [ ..... ]
2. Mayar's parents didn't learn to read in braille. [ ..... ]

[Cairo - New Cairo 2025]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. Where was Grandma waiting for Asser ?  
.....
2. When did Mayar's parents learn braille ?  
.....

[Cairo - Helwan 2025]

## Mini Test

3

**A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. When Asser opened the car trunk, he found clean clothes. [ ..... ]
2. Mayar was carrying a toy. [ ..... ]

[Aswan - English Supervision 2025]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. Why couldn't the children's parents pick them up ?  
.....
2. What should Mayar take for her pottery classes ?  
.....

[Qena - Dshna 2025]

### Mini Test

4

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser and Mayar made cookies with Grandma.
2. Asser's new book has words in braille.

[ ..... ]

[ ..... ]

[Sharkia - East Zagazig 2025]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. Where did the children stay after school ?  
.....
2. What did Asser do when he saw his Grandma ?  
.....

[Sharkia - Hehia 2025]

### Mini Test

5

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser saw his parents' muddy boots in the trunk.
2. Mrs Azza gave Asser a braille book.

[ ..... ]

[ ..... ]

[Sharkia - 10<sup>th</sup> of Ramadan 2025]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did grandma make for the children ?  
.....
2. What did Mayar's parents learn when she was a baby ?  
.....

[Menofia - Shebeen El-Kom 2025]

### Mini Test

6

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser put his pens and pencils away neatly.
2. Grandma's coming at school was a bad surprise.

[ ..... ]

[ ..... ]

[Port Said - English Supervision 2025]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. What was Mayar carrying ?  
.....
2. Why did Asser and Mayar go to grandma's house ?  
.....

[Minia - Samalout 2025]



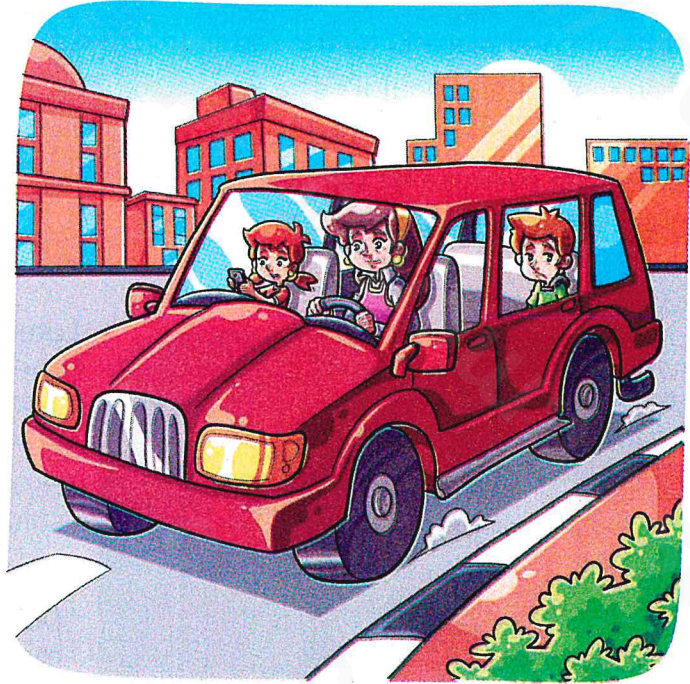
# 2

## The Middle منتصف القصة

"Can we listen to an audiobook, Mom" asked Mayar.

"Yes, of course", her mom said.

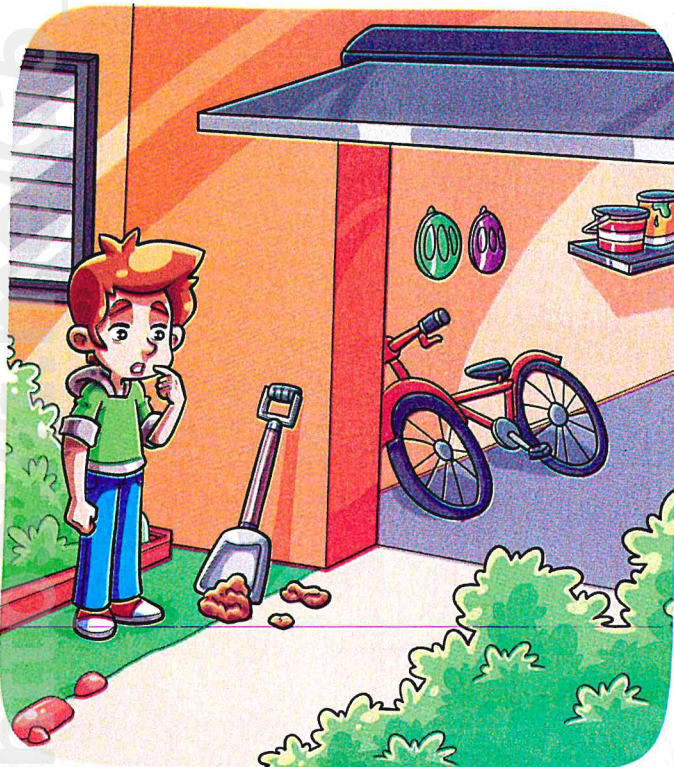
While Mayar and her mom chose an audiobook, Asser looked out of the window. He was thinking about his school concert next week. He hoped his parents remembered it. He really wanted them to come and watch him. Asser wanted to ask his mom about the concert, but she looked tired. He decided to ask her later.



On the weekend, the parents were busy again. Salma planned to take the children to Grandma's. It was a beautiful day, so Asser decided to take his football.

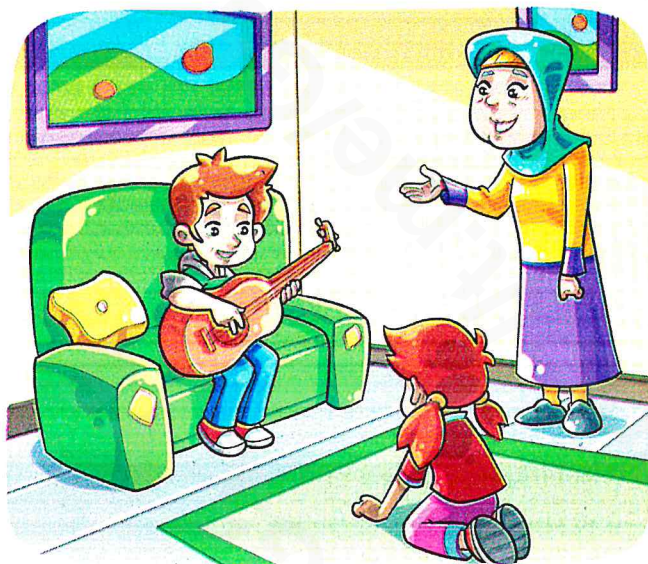
He went to the garage to get this football. Outside the garage, he saw his dad's shovel. It was covered in mud. Asser looked around the yard. There was nothing different there, no new trees or plants. Why was the shovel so muddy ?

"That's strange," thought Asser.





Asser and Mayar went to their grandma's house every day that week. Asser was worried about the concert. He really wanted his mom and dad to go to the concert. He wanted them to hear him sing and play his guitar. Did they remember about it? They were so busy. He practiced his song a lot because he wanted the concert to go well.



Later on, Asser was playing in Grandma's yard while Mayar listened to an audiobook. Asser's friend, Shady, came by.

"Hi, Asser I didn't know you lived here," said Shady.

"It's my grandma's house," said Asser.

"Do you want to come to the park with me and my dad" asked Shady.

"Yes, but I'll have to ask Grandma," said Asser.

Asser went inside "Grandma, can I go to the park with Shady and his dad, please?" he said

"Yes, of course Take your water bottle!" replied Grandma.



## Questions & Answers

### on the Middle

تدريبات مجاب عنها مع التوضيح اعدت خصيصًا لتمكن الطالب من التعامل بسهولة مع تدريبات القصة

#### 1. Read and write YES or NO.

Yes

1. Mayar and her mom listened to an audio book in the car
2. Asser took his football.
3. The shovel was covered in mud.
4. Asser practiced his song a lot.
5. Asser went to the park with Shady and his dad.
6. Asser was worried about the concert.

Yes  
Yes  
Yes  
Yes  
Yes  
Yes



## 2. Read and write YES or NO.

No Correction

1. Asser went to the garage to get his <u>car</u> .	No	football
2. The shovel was covered in <u>sand</u> .	No	mud
3. <u>Mayar</u> practiced <u>her</u> song a lot for the concert.	No	Asser - his
4. Asser was playing in <u>Grandpa's</u> yard.	No	Grandma's
5. Asser went with his <u>cousin</u> Shady to the park.	No	friend
6. Asser saw a <u>basket</u> outside the garage.	No	shovel

## 3. Read and answer the questions.

Answers

1. What did Mayar listen to in the car ?	An audio book.
2. What was Asser worried about ?	His concert.
3. Why did Asser go to the garage ?	To get his football.
4. What instrument did Asser play ?	The guitar.
5. Where was Asser playing football ?	In Grandma's yard.
6. Who took Asser to the park ?	Shady and his father.

## General Exercises

on the middle of the story

### 1 El-Moasser exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

#### Mini Test

1

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

- Mayar wanted to listen to the radio in the car. [.....]
- Asser was thinking about his school concert. [.....]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

- Why did Asser go to the garage ?  
.....
- Who invited Asser to go to the park ?  
.....

#### Mini Test

2

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

- Dad planned to take the children to Grandma's house. [.....]
- Asser went to the garage to get his basketball. [.....]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

- Where did Salma take the children on the weekend ?  
.....
- What did Asser see in the garage ?  
.....

### Mini Test

3

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser wanted his parents to remember his concert.
2. Asser saw a basket outside the garage.

[ ..... ]

[ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. How did Asser feel about his concert ?

.....

2. What did Asser see outside the garage ?

.....

### Mini Test

4

#### A Read and write Yes or No.

1. Asser went to the garage to get his guitar.
2. The shovel was covered in ice.

[ ..... ]

[ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. What was Asser doing when he saw his dad's muddy shovel ?

.....

2. Why did Asser go to the garage ?

.....

### Mini Test

5

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. The shovel was covered in ice.
2. Mayar wanted to listen to an audiobook in the car.

[ ..... ]

[ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. Where did Asser go with Shady ?

.....

2. What was Asser thinking about ?

.....

### Mini Test

6

#### A Read and write Yes or No.

1. Asser practiced his song a lot.
2. Mayar has a concert next week.

[ ..... ]

[ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did Mayar and her mom listen to in the car ?

.....

2. What was Asser worried about ?

.....



**2****Previous Exams**

تدريبات من الامتحانات السابقة

**Mini Test****1****A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Asser went to the garage to get his guitar.
2. Mayar listened to the audiobook in the car.

[ ..... ]

[ ..... ]

[Cairo - El Waili 2025]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. Who invited Asser to go to the park ?

.....

2. How did Asser feel about his concert ?

.....

[Giza - Warraq 2025]

**Mini Test****2****A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Asser saw his dad's shovel covered in mud.
2. Shady and his dad invited Asser to the park.

[ ..... ]

[ ..... ]

[Alexandria - West Alexandria 2025]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. How often did Asser and Mayar go to Grandma's house that week ?

.....

2. When did Salma plan to take the children to Grandma's house ?

.....

[Beheira - El Nubaria 2025]

**Mini Test****3****A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Shady and Asser didn't go to the park together.
2. Asser practiced the guitar for the school concert.

[ ..... ]

[ ..... ]

[Damietta - English Supervision 2025]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. Who was worried about the concert ?

.....

2. Where did Asser go to get the football ?

.....

[Giza - English Inspection 2025]

### Mini Test

4

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser was thinking about his school concert.
2. Mayar has a concert next week.

[ ..... ]

[ ..... ]

[Port Said - North Port Said 2025]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. Why did Asser decide to ask his mom about the concert later ?

.....

2. What did Asser see at the garage ?

.....

[Luxor - Esna 2025]

### Mini Test

5

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser saw his dad's shovel covered in mud.
2. Mayar wanted her parents to hear her song.

[ ..... ]

[ ..... ]

[Cairo - Ain Shams 2025]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. Where was Asser playing football ?

.....

2. Who took Asser to the park ?

.....

[Minya - Samalout 2025]

### Mini Test

6

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Shady is Asser's brother.
2. Mayar and her mom chose a written book to listen.

[ ..... ]

[ ..... ]

[Sohag - English Supervision 2025]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. Why did Asser practice his song a lot ?

.....

2. What did Asser take when he went to the park ?

.....

[Aswan - Kom Ombo 2025]



# 3

## The End نهاية القصة

Asser and Shady had fun in the park. When they got tired, they sat down by some thick bushes. They drank some water and ate some fruit.

They were sitting quietly when they heard people talking.

"That sounds like your mom and dad" said Shady.

Asser looked around. Shady was right. It sounded like they were near - but where ?



Asser and Shady walked around the bushes. on the other side, there was a group of people working. Asser's parents were there, digging.

Asser ran over to his parents. When his parents saw them, they looked surprised.

"Asser! What are you doing here?" asked his dad.

Asser replied, "Shady and his dad invited me to come to the park. Grandma said it was OK."

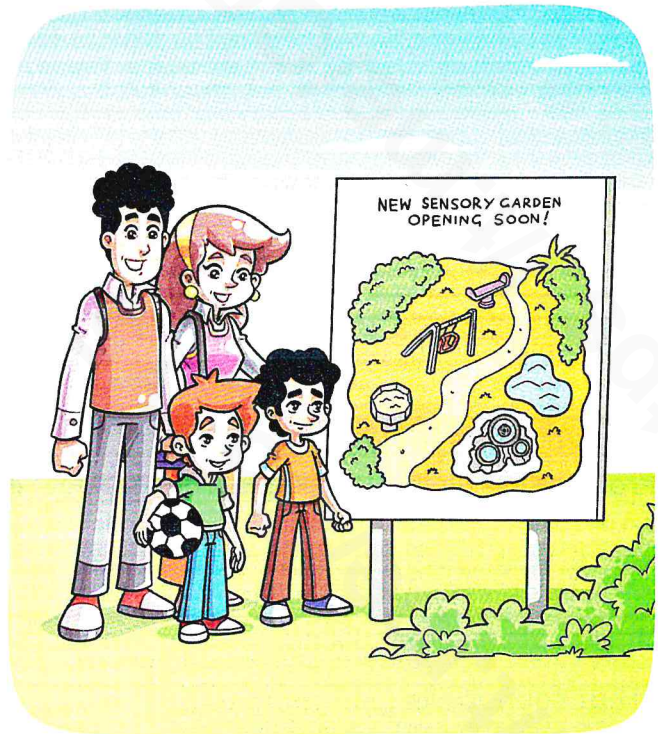
Asser looked down and saw his dad's muddy boots. "But what are you doing here?" he asked.



Asser's parents looked at each other and laughed. His dad put down his spade. They showed Asser and Shady a large information board with a plan on it. The plan showed lots of exciting new play equipment.

"We're making a playground with a sensory garden. It's for all the children in the neighborhood to enjoy", said Salma.

Shady's dad arrived. "Wow! This is going to be amazing," he said.

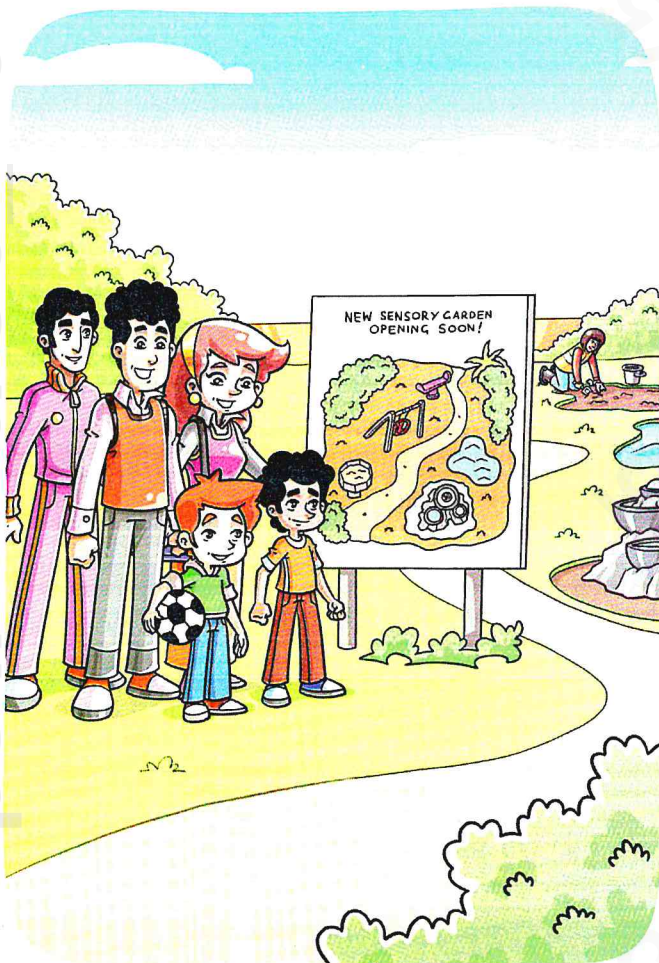


"What's a sensory garden?" asked Shady.

"A sensory garden is a place where you can hear, see, and touch all kinds of interesting things," said Asser's dad. "Mayor and a lot of other children couldn't use some of the equipment in the old playground. So, we're working with these builders to make a space that everybody can enjoy. There's a fountain, and there will be wind chimes for relaxing sounds. There will be wide paths, so it's easy for people in wheelchairs to enjoy the garden."

"We're planting flowers, too," said Asser's mom. "They will smell beautiful."

"This is awesome," said Asser. "Is this why you've been so busy?"





"Yes, it is! We didn't tell you about it because it's a surprise!" said his dad.

"I'd love to do something to help, too!" said Asser.

"Great!" said his mom. "The builders are putting in the big equipment next week, but you can help us plant the flowers".

"You can hang the wind chimes, too," said his dad.

Asser and Shady started helping. It was hard work, but the boys had fun.

"Thank you for helping!" said Asser's mom. "When this opens next week, you can come and show everybody around".



The next weekend, the children's Mom said, "Mayar, we have a surprise!"

"What is it?" asked Mayar.

"We can't tell you. It's a secret. Let's all go to the park," said Mayar's dad.

Asser enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden.

"I love it here! The fountain is my favorite thing!" said Mayar.

"Thank you for helping us, Asser," said their mom, "and don't worry - we haven't forgot your concert!"

• **The moral of the story :**

- It's important to think about everyone in your community.

## Questions & Answers

on the End

تدريبات مجاب عنها مع التوضيح اعدت خصيصًا لتمكن الطالب من التعامل بسهولة مع تدريبات القصة

### 1. Read and write YES or NO.

Yes

- |   |     |
|---|-----|
| 1. Asser and Shady sat by some thick bushes.                      | Yes |
| 2. Asser heard his parents' voice in the park.                    | Yes |
| 3. Asser's parents showed him a large information board.          | Yes |
| 4. Asser's parents are making a playground with a sensory garden. | Yes |
| 5. There's a fountain in the sensory garden.                      | Yes |
| 6. It's easy for people in wheelchair to enjoy the garden.        | Yes |

★ تم وضع سبب الإجابة للتدريب فقط.

### 2. Read and write YES or NO.

No

Correction

- |  |    |                |
|--|----|----------------|
| 1. <u>Mayar</u> and Asser helped in the sensory garden.            | No | Shady          |
| 2. Mayar's favorite thing is the <u>chimes</u> .                   | No | fountain       |
| 3. Asser's parents <u>forgot</u> his concert.                      | No | didn't forget  |
| 4. Asser's parents made a <u>theme park</u> .                      | No | sensory garden |
| 5. There <u>aren't</u> wind chimes for relaxing sounds.            | No | are            |
| 6. <u>Grandma</u> enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden. | No | Asser          |

### 3. Read and answer the questions.

Answers

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Why didn't Asser's parents tell him about the sensory garden ? | - Because it was a surprise.  |
| 2. Who invited Asser to come to the park ?                        | - Shady and his dad.  |
| 3. What was Asser's parents surprise ?                            | - They were making a sensory garden.  |
| 4. What is a sensory garden ?                                     | - It's a place where you can hear, see and touch all kinds of interesting things. |
| 5. Why did Asser's parents make a sensory garden ?                | - Because some children couldn't use some equipment in the old playground.        |
| 6. How could Asser and Shady help in the sensory garden ?         | - They planted flowers and hung the chimes.                                       |



## General Exercises

on the end of the story

1

### El-Moasser exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

#### Mini Test

1

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser's parents were angry when they saw him. [ ..... ]
2. Asser's parents were eating in the park. [ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. What were Asser's parents doing on the other side of the park ?  
.....

2. How did the parents feel when Asser saw them in the park ?  
.....

#### Mini Test

2

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser and Shady had fun in the cinema. [ ..... ]
2. Mom and Dad are making a playground with a sensory garden. [ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did the parents show Asser ?  
.....

2. Where did Asser and Shady sit down ?  
.....

#### Mini Test

3

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser saw his dad's muddy boots. [ ..... ]
2. There is a fountain in the sensory garden. [ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. Why did Asser's parents have muddy boots ?  
.....

2. Did Asser and Shady have fun in the park ?  
.....

### Mini Test

4

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser and Shady had fun in the park. [ ..... ]
2. The sensory garden will open next month. [ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. Why didn't Asser's parents tell him about the sensory garden ?  
.....
2. What is a sensory garden ?  
.....

### Mini Test

5

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser and Shady sat down by some tall trees. [ ..... ]
2. There are a wind chimes in the sensory garden. [ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. What was Asser's parents' secret ?  
.....
2. Who will be able to use the sensory garden ?  
.....

2

## Previous Exams تدريبات من الامتحانات السابقة

### Mini Test

1

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. A sensory garden is a place where you can swim in the sea. [ ..... ]
2. There will be wide paths for people in wheelchairs. [ ..... ]

[Cairo - Helwan 2025]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. How did Asser find out his parents' secret ?  
.....
2. What did Asser's mom show him when he saw her in the park ?  
.....

[Dakahlia - West Mansoura 2025]

### Mini Test

2

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. The sensory garden is just for Mayar. [ ..... ]
2. Asser and Shady drank some water and ate some fruit in the park. [ ..... ]

[Menofia - Shebin El Kom 2025]



**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. What is the favorite thing for Mayar in the sensory garden ?

2. How did Asser feel about the concert at the end of the story ?

[Port Said - East Port Said 2025]

**Mini Test**

**3**

**A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. There will be a swimming pool in the sensory garden.

[ ..... ]

2. Asser and Shady were studying in the park.

[ ..... ]

[Cairo - West Nasr 2025]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. Where did Asser see his parents ?

2. How were mom and dad's boots ?

[Alexandria - Al Gomrok 2025]

**Mini Test**

**4**

**A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Asser and Shady sat by the bushes.

[ ..... ]

2. There is a fountain in the garden.

[ ..... ]

[Qena - Deshna 2025]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. Where did Asser and Shady sit down in the park ?

2. What did you learn from the story ?

[Ismailia - English supervision 2025]

**Mini Test**

**5**

**A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Asser's parents were singing on the other side of the park.

[ ..... ]

2. The sensory garden will open next week.

[ ..... ]

[Sharkia - West Zagazig 2025]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. What was the surprise that the parents prepared ?

2. What did Asser and Shady see on the information board ?

[Giza - Warraq 2025]

## General Exercises | on the end of the story

### 1 El-Moasser exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

#### Mini Test

1

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Mayar has a concert next week. [ ..... ]
2. Grandma made coffee for children. [ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. Why do Asser and Mayar go to Grandma's house ?  
.....

2. What did the parents show Asser ?  
.....

#### Mini Test

2

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser practiced his song a lot. [ ..... ]
2. There're wind chimes in the sensory garden. [ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did Salma plan to do on the weekend ?  
.....

2. Why did Asser go to the garage ?  
.....

#### Mini Test

3

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. The fountain is Mayar's favorite thing in the park. [ ..... ]
2. Mayar and her mom chose a written book to listen. [ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. When did Mayar's parents learn braille ?  
.....

2. What was wrong with the old playground ?  
.....



### Mini Test

4

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Mayar wanted her parents to hear her sing and play the guitar. [ ..... ]
2. Asser's parents were making a playground with a sensory garden. [ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. Who came by Grandma's house and spoke to Asser ?  
.....

2. Where did Asser and Shady go ?  
.....

### Mini Test

5

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Mrs Azza came to talk to Grandma. [ ..... ]
2. The parents were busy on the weekend. [ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. What musical instrument did Asser play ?  
.....

2. What class did Mayar have ?  
.....

### Mini Test

6

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. There will be wind chimes in the new sensory garden. [ ..... ]
2. Shady is Asser's friend. [ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. Where did Asser go to get the football ?  
.....

2. Where was Grandma waiting for Asser ?  
.....

### Mini Test

7

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. When Asser opened the car trunk, he saw new boots. [ ..... ]
2. Mayar was carrying a game. [ ..... ]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. Why did Asser's parents have muddy boots ?

.....

2. How did Asser find out his parents' secret ?

.....

**Mini Test**

**8**

**A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Mrs Eman is Asser's school teacher.

[ ..... ]

2. Mayar and grandma helped to plant flowers.

[ ..... ]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. Why did Asser decide to ask his mom about the concert later ?

.....

2. What did the parents show Asser and Shady ?

.....

**Mini Test**

**9**

**A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Children went to Grandpa's house after school.

[ ..... ]

2. Asser's parents were building a sensory garden to grow vegetables.

[ ..... ]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. Who was worried about the concert ?

.....

2. Where did Asser play football with Shady ?

.....

**Mini Test**

**10**

**A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Shady and Mayer chose an audiobook to listen.

[ ..... ]

2. Asser saw his dad's shovel outside the garage.

[ ..... ]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. Where was grandma waiting Asser ?

.....

2. What was Asser worried about his parents might forget ?

.....



**2****Previous Exams**

تدريبات من الامتحانات السابقة

**Mini Test****11****A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Mayar went to the park with Asser. [ ..... ]
2. Asser has a concert next week. [ ..... ]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. What did Grandma offer to make for Asser and Mayar ?  
.....
2. Where did Asser and Shady go ?  
.....

[Cairo – Ain Shams 2025]

**Mini Test****12****A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Mrs Eman is Asser's teacher. [ ..... ]
2. Asser and Shady sat down by some tall trees in the park. [ ..... ]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. What did the children make with their grandmother ?  
.....
2. What was Asser's parents' secret ?  
.....

[Menofia – Shebeen El Kom 2025]

**Mini Test****13****A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Asser and Mayar make a cake at grandma's house. [ ..... ]
2. The sensory garden is just for Mayar. [ ..... ]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. What did Asser see when he opened the car trunk ?  
.....
2. Who came by Grandma's house and spoke to Asser ?  
.....

[Suez 2025]

**Mini Test****14****A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Asser is blind, he can't see. [ ..... ]
2. Grandma is waiting at the school gates. [ ..... ]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. What was wrong with the old playground ?  
.....
2. Who will be able to use the new sensory garden ?  
.....

[Beheira – Abo Hommos 2025]

**Mini Test****15****A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Asser liked to play the guitar. [ ..... ]
2. Shady and Asser didn't go to the park together. [ ..... ]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. Who was waiting for the children at the school gates ?  
.....
2. What is Mayar's favorite thing in the sensory garden ?  
.....

[Gharbia – Tanta 2025]

**Mini Test****16****A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Mayar has a new book. [ ..... ]
2. Asser saw his dad's shovel outside the garage. [ ..... ]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. What is Mayar's favorite thing in the sensory garden ?  
.....
2. What was Asser worried about ?  
.....

[Dakahlia – English Supervision 2025]



**Mini Test****17****A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Asser and Shady had fun in the park. [ ..... ]
2. Grandma listened to an audiobook. [ ..... ]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. What did Asser and Shady see on the information board ?  
.....

2. What did Mayar have to read ?  
.....

[Minia – Deir Mawas 2025]

**Mini Test****18****A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Mayar has a concert next week. [ ..... ]
2. Grandma made coffee for children. [ ..... ]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. Why do Asser and Mayar go to Grandma's house ?  
.....

2. What did the parents show Asser ?  
.....

[Giza – South Giza 2025]

**Mini Test****19****A Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Asser's grandma was waiting at the school gates. [ ..... ]
2. Asser found his parent's bag in the car. [ ..... ]

**B Read and answer the questions.**

1. What was Mayar carrying ?  
.....

2. What is Mayar's favorite thing in the sensory garden ?  
.....

[Alexandria – West Alexandria 2025]

### Mini Test

20

#### A Read and write YES or NO.

1. Asser put his pens and pencils away neatly.
2. Mayar was Asser's teacher.

[ ..... ]

[ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. Where did the children stay until the evening ?

.....

2. Where was grandma waiting ?

.....

[Beheira - Kom Hamada 2025]

### Mini Test

21

#### A Read and write Yes or No.

1. Asser saw grandma waiting at the school gates.
2. A sensory garden is a place where you can swim in the sea.

[ ..... ]

[ ..... ]

#### B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did Asser see in his dad's car ?

.....

2. What was Asser's parent's secret ?

.....

[Qalyoubia - English Supervision 2025]

## Interactive Notebook

- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي
- تمكنك من إتقان المفردات اللغوية ( التسميع )
- والقواعد اللغوية وتدريبات على الوحدات







# Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع  
الخاصة بكتاب الشرح



## Unit 1

### Test 1 on Lessons 1&2

• Listen and answer the questions.

Noha and Hesham are talking about a competition. They want to enter a creative project competition. Noha's favorite activity is painting. She always feels happy when she paints. Hesham doesn't feel happy when he's painting. He prefers making things with his hands. His favorite activity is making pottery.

### Test 2 on Lessons 3&4

• Listen and answer the questions.

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954 and moved to London to study art in 1973. He likes to use new interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places. People can see his arts all over the world.

### Test 3 on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

• Listen and answer the questions.

My name is Amira. My class worked on a pottery project this week. We started with a lump of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl. First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. When my bowl was finished, I gave it to my mom for her birthday.

### Test 4 on Unit 1

• Listen and answer the questions.

My name is Maged. My favorite hobby is designing clothes. My grandma is the person who helped me learn this hobby. She was a famous fashion designer. Sometimes at school, the drama teacher asks me to design costumes for a play. I prefer using recycled cloth instead of buying new cloth to help the environment.

### Test 5 on Unit 1

• Listen and answer the questions.

Yesterday was unusual day at school. It was the school show. Everybody was excited. The show started with the choir. Fourteen students were in the choir. They sang a lot of famous children songs. Then, there was the play. It was amazing. The play was the last part of the school show. All the audience enjoyed it.



## Unit 2

### Test 6 on Lessons 1&2

• Listen and answer the questions.

Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922. He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together.

### Test 7 on Lessons 3&4

- Listen and answer the questions.

Mazen thinks electricity is the most useful in our free time. He loves his laptop! He does his homework on it, then he plays video games with his brother. He loves to watch television with his grandma in the evening, too.

### Test 8 on Lessons 5,6&7

- Listen and answer the questions.

If you want to have a turtle as a pet, you have to know these things. Turtles like to eat flowers and plants. They need very large space for their home. They need clean soil to dig in. They sometimes need a heat lamp to keep them nice and warm.

### Test 9 on Unit 2

- Listen and answer the questions.

Sameh and Nadine were on school vacation at home with their parents. One morning, Sameh was in the living room, playing with his new kitten. Suddenly, the kitten jumped off the chair and ran through a small hole in the wall. Sameh put his hand through the hole to get her but all he could feel was some paper. He pulled the paper - it was a very old message. Sameh felt very curious.

### Test 10 on Unit 2

- Listen and answer the questions.

I'm Ali. We moved into a new apartment a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom I love my new room. It's a very light and comfortable room. I share it with my brother, Maged, and we're good friends. We have a long desk for our PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom. When we finish our homework, we can play computer games.

### Test 11 on Units 1&2

- Listen and answer the questions.

A cat needs a scratch post. This is a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on. Cats also like toys to play with. A collar with the cat's name and address on it is a good idea. If your cat gets lost, somebody can bring it home to you.



## Unit 3

### Test 12 on Lessons 1&2

- Listen and answer the questions.

In Northern Siberia, some students have their lessons in tents on snow! Many people in the North of Siberia are nomadic. Nomadic people don't live in one place. They travel in sleds across the frozen land and sleep in tents. They look after reindeer and take them to where there is food.

### Test 13 on Lessons 3&4

- Listen and answer the questions.

Hana loves cooking. She started a cooking club. She thinks cooking club is great. Last week, they made special cookies for Eid Al-Fitr. This week, they are going to make lemon juice.



### Test 14 on Lessons 5,6&7

#### • Listen and answer the questions.

I'm Mona. Miss Basma is our English teacher. Yesterday, she told us about a school trip to the Egyptian Museum. I like school trips. I think school trips are exciting because we can learn experiences. We can learn a lot by visiting new places. In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos.

### Test 15 on Unit 3

#### • Listen and answer the questions.

My name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm 11, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school. In kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always lots of toys in the classroom. We do more interesting subjects, like ICT. I like using computers !

### Test 16 on Unit 3

#### • Listen and answer the questions.

Nebsin didn't want to get up. The sun was bright, but his bed was comfortable. Nebsin went into the kitchen. His mom was making breakfast. Nebsin's father was a scribe. Nebsin didn't know what job he wanted to do in the future.



## Unit 4

### Test 17 on Lessons 1 & 2

#### • Listen and answer the questions.

My friend Hani is twelve years old. He has brown curly hair. He has brown eyes. He uses a wheelchair because he can't walk well. He is good at English. We play basketball in the school team.

### Test 18 on Lessons 3&4

#### • Listen and answer the questions.

Noha is my best friend. She is eleven. She lives in London with her parents. Noha's favorite hobby is playing volleyball. She writes me a letter every month.

### Test 19 on Lessons 5,6 &7

#### • Listen and answer the questions.

My name's Dalia. I'm eleven, and I live in Alexandria. I go to school at Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends. I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces. I have an older brother called Ali and an older sister called Sama, so they call me the baby of the family !

### Test 20 on Unit 4

#### • Listen and answer the questions.

I'm Miss Rana. I want you to get into groups to make posters about animals which live in tropical rainforests. It should be an advertisement for the rainforest. I would like colorful posters with lots of interesting information. You can get

in your groups now. I'd like everyone to work together and don't forget – kindness is important.

### **Test 21 on Unit 4**

- **Listen and answer the questions.**

I'm Ramez. My favorite hobby is photography. Last week, our club went for a walk in the park. When our teacher pointed to an object, we took a photograph of it but we could only take one photo ! So, we had to look carefully and decide where to stand. It was fun.

### **Test 22 on Units 3&4**

- **Listen and answer the questions.**

We go to school from Sunday to Friday. I have to wear a school uniform. My school uniform and shoes have to be neat. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. We have an hour for lunch. I usually bring lunch from home.

### **October Test**

- **Listen and answer the questions.**

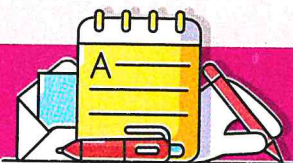
Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places, and people can see his art all over the world.

### **November Test**

- **Listen and answer the questions.**

My friend Sherif is twelve years old. He has brown curly hair. He has brown eyes. He uses a wheelchair because he can't walk well. He is good at English. He plays basketball in the school team.





## Answers of Topics

إجابات الموضوعات



### Unit 1

#### Test 1 on Lessons 1 & 2

##### "A competition"

Next week, we will have a competition in our school. This competition will be about creative activities. I want to enter it. There are many different activities like junk modeling, pottery and designing clothes. In this competition, we can use recycled cloth and natural materials to save money and help the planet. Our work will appear in a big art exhibition in the city museum. It will be a great competition and we will enjoy it.

#### Test 2 on Lessons 3 & 4

##### "A famous sculptor"

Anish Kapoor is a famous sculptor. Kapoor is a great artist. He was born in India. He studied art in the UK. He likes to use new shapes as well as different materials. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. He can make sculptures that will stay in a place for a long time. He uses stainless steel because it stays shiny and bad weather doesn't damage it.

#### Test 3 on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

##### "A school show"

The school show was great. I wasn't in a play. Magdy and I don't like acting. Magdy was the photographer of the school show, but my job was

better than that. I helped Mr Ali make the props. Props are the things that actors need on stage to make the play look real. If the play is about a family at home in the living room, you need some furniture. Magdy put the photos on the school website. They looked great.

#### Test 4 on Unit 1

##### "A pottery project"

Last week, my class worked on a pottery project at school. Our teacher asked us to choose what we like to make. I wanted to make a vase. The teacher showed us how to use the pottery wheel. It was difficult. When we finished work, the teacher put pottery in a kiln to make it hard and strong. We let them cool and decorated them with different colors of paint. I was proud of my little vase.

#### Test 5 on Unit 1

##### "Creative activities"

There are lots of creative activities we can do. You can try junk modeling to build a rocket, a ship or a house. You can use clay to make beautiful pottery. You can make beautiful collage with material, paint and colored paper. If you have a computer, you can make an animation. All these skills show how creative you are.



## Unit 2

### Test 6 on Lessons 1 & 2

From mahdy22@gmail.com  
To essam@yahoo.com  
Subject My bedroom

Dear Essam,

We moved into a new apartment last month. I'm happy because I have a new room. My new room is large, light and more comfortable. I share it with my brother, Hassan. We are always good friends. We have a long desk for PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom. When we finish our homework, we can play computer games in our room. We can watch cartoons with our friends, too.

Yours,  
Mahdy

### Test 7 on Lessons 3 & 4

#### "Why is electricity important ?"

In my opinion, electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop. I do my homework on it, then I play video games with my brother. I love to watch television with my grandma in the evening. These devices all need electricity. Electricity is also important in the kitchen. We can't use our electric kettle without electricity or our blender or our refrigerator.

### Test 8 on Lessons 5,6 & 7

#### "The special house"

Our house is special. It's a very old house in Giza. I live in it with my

parents, brothers and my sister. It was built from bricks and stone in the 1950s. My great grandmother lived here with my mom, dad, and five brothers and sisters. We have a spare room. In the spare room, we keep some old boxes. The house has changed before my parents' marriage. The walls are a different color.

### Test 9 on Unit 2

#### "Caring for your cat"

Give your cat lots of attention so it feels safe. You should move your hand over its back, or under its chin. Cats love this! They like a warm, comfortable bed. Don't wake it up - cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day! They like small meals at different times in the day. If you look after your cat well, you'll have a new furry friend in your life!

### Test 10 on Unit 2

#### "The chores You and Your family do every weekend"

We do a lot of chores in our house. Every weekend, we help each other to keep our house clean and tidy. I mop up the water. My sister picks up the books and washes the dishes. My mom cooks lunch and tidies up the living room. My dad hangs up the clothes. My brother puts out the garbage. After a long day, we rest and have fun together.

### Test 11 on Units 1 & 2

#### "Amazing appliances"

I think the blender is one of the most important appliances in the kitchen. It is made by a Polish - American man. He



is called Stephen. He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor which turned the blade to blend the food together. He used his new invention to make milkshakes.



## Unit 3

### Test 12 on Lessons 1 & 2

#### "Your school week"

Hi, my name's Lilly. I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm eleven, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school.

We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school uniform, but my clothes and shoes have to be neat. School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the cafeteria, or outside in summer.

### Test 13 on Lessons 3 & 4

#### "Green City School"

At Green City School, we care about helping the environment. We use solar panels to make electricity. We recycle a lot of paper and plastic. There is also a demonstration about sorting waste. We have an open day for new students and their families to learn about all our activities.

### Test 14 on Lessons 5, 6 & 7

#### "Your opinion about school trips"

I think school trips are exciting learning experiences. We can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better. In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.

### Test 15 on Unit 3

From	hatem90@yahoo.com
To	saleem11@yahoo.com
Subject	School clubs

Dear Saleem,

How are things ? Let me tell you about our school sports clubs. Today we practiced inside for the first half hour. First, we had to run up and down the playground 20 times. Then we climbed a rope. That was really difficult. After that, we ran a 400 - meter race outside. I love running, but it makes me very tired. After that, we played a game for 15 minutes. It was great. My team won! Join our club to learn a new skill and meet new people!

Yours,  
Hatem

### **Test 16 on Unit 3**

#### **"Your school"**

We go to school from Sunday to Friday. I have to wear a school uniform. My school uniform and shoes have to be neat. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We do more interesting subjects, like ICT. I like using computers! School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I study science in the laboratory. The playground is very big. We have an hour for lunch. I usually bring lunch from home.



## **Unit 4**

### **Test 17 on Lessons 1 & 2**

#### **"We're all different"**

If we were all the same, life would be boring. In my class, Asser is different to his friends because he's tall and he has brown eyes. He's good at science, but his friend Seleem is good at geography. Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is straight and he wears glasses. Injy has curly hair and wears braces to help her teeth get straight. The important thing is that we look after each other. People shouldn't be unkind to each other because they're different.

### **Test 18 on Lessons 3 & 4**

#### **"Working together on a poster"**

We got into groups to make a poster about rainforest animals. We made a

colorful poster with lots of interesting information. While we were working, we showed kindness because it was very important. We also worked together. My friend Fares collected the pictures. Amira wrote the words. We were very happy after finishing the poster.

### **Test 19 on Lessons 5, 6 & 7**

#### **"A short story you have read"**

This short story is about a boy called Adam. He has a problem with his leg. He uses a wheelchair. He plays wheelchair basketball. He is very clever and talented. Last week, his team was playing the final match. They were about to lose the final. During the last minute, Adam scored three points for his team, so they won the game.

### **Test 20 on Unit 4**

#### **"My personal profile"**

Hi everybody!

I'm Malek and I'm eleven. I live in Cairo and I go to El Salam School. I'm in grade 6. My best friends at school are Omar and Ali. We're in the same class. I have short dark hair and I wear glasses. I have a brother, Anas, and a sister, Malak. I'm really into sports. I love watching football games on TV with my dad. On the weekend, I often meet my friends in the park to play basketball. Omar records the most points, so everybody wants him to be in their team. I want to be an engineer. Write and tell me about yourself.



### Test 21 on Unit 4

#### **"A short description of a friend"**

Tom is my best friend. He is 12 years old. He is from England. He is English. He is tall and wears glasses. He has short brown hair. He has got big green eyes. He can play football, but he can't play tennis. He loves reading and always has a book in his hand. His favorite color is yellow. His favorite food is pizza. He also likes pets. He has got a small puppy. He is friendly and nice. He is always happy.

### Test 22 on Units 3 & 4

#### **"Studying the past"**

I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present. I think, we can learn a lot by studying the past. History helps us understand our society and other cultures. Some people say that the present is more interesting than the past, but I don't agree. History is interesting and exciting. It is full of great stories and interesting people. Finally, history helps us learn from past mistakes so that we don't repeat the same mistakes in the future.

### October Test

#### **"A pet"**

Pets are animals that live in our homes. They are not dangerous. Pets need many things to live happily. They need good food and water. They should have enough sleep. Cats sleep most of the day. You should take your pet to the vet every month. Vets check their health and give them the vaccine. Pets help us to be calm and happy. They also are good for our mood.

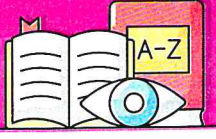
### November Test

From	malek@gmail.com
To	anas@gmail.com
Subject	Green roofs

Dear Anas,

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school ! The Shagara at school project designs gardens and green roofs for the school in Egypt. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring nature into the city. They are great for the environment. This project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden.

Yours,  
Malek



# Translation of Listening & Reading Texts

ترجمة نصوص الاستماع  
والقراءة لكتاب الشرح



## Unit 1

### Lesson 1. Show your creativity

شارك في مسابقتنا الجديدة الممتعة وأظهر لنا مدى إبداعك! نريد من الأطفال الذين تتراوح أعمارهم بين الخامسة والخامسة عشر أن يرسلوا لنا أعمالهم الإبداعية، سيتم عرض عملك في معرض فني كبير في متحف المدينة.

هناك العديد من الطرق المختلفة التي يمكنك من خلالها التعبير عن نفسك. يمكنك أن ترسل لنا لوحة أو صورة أو قصيدة أو قصة. أو لما لا تجرب شيئاً جديداً؟ إليك بعض الأفكار لأنشطة إبداعية مختلفة ستجعلك متحمساً!

تصميم نماذج باستخدام مواد قديمة

ماذا يمكنك أن تصنع بصندوق الورق المقوى؟ أو الزجاجات والأغطية البلاستيكية؟ جرب تصميم نماذج باستخدام مواد قديمة! استخدم مهاراتك الإبداعية ومهاراتك في التصميم لبناء صاروخ أو سفينة أو سيارة أو منزل. فن صناعة الأواني الفخارية

هل تحب أن تتسخ يديك [بالصلصال]؟ إذن قم بتجربة صناعة الأواني الفخارية! استخدم الصلصال لصنع وعاء أو كوب أو زهرية. تصميم الملابس

إذا لم تتمكن من العثور على أي شيء تريد ارتدائه، ماذا عن تصميم وصنع ملابسك الخاصة؟ يمكنك استخدام القماش المعاد تدويره لتوفير المال ومساعدة الكوكب.

صناعة الأعمال الفنية من الملصقات

إذا لم تتمكن من تحديد ما ستستخدمه في مشروعك، فاستخدم القليل من كل شيء! يمكنك إنشاء مجموعة جميلة من الأعمال من الملصقات باستخدام مواد مختلفة وطلاء وورق ملون. صناعة المجوهرات

استخدم حبات الخرز لصناعة مجوهرات جميلة، على سبيل المثال، القلائد أو الأساور. فن النحت

يمكنك استخدام الخشب أو الصلصال أو الحجر لعمل تمثال لحيوان أو شخص أو شكل جديد تماماً. الفن الخارجي

استخدم الأشياء التي تجدها حولك في العالم الخارجي، على سبيل المثال، أوراق الشجر أو الأصداق لعمل بعض الأعمال الفنية الخارجية.

الرسوم المتحركة الحاسوبية

إذا كنت تفضل استخدام التكنولوجيا، فيمكنك استخدام مهاراتك في الحاسوب لإنشاء فيلم أو فيديو رسوم متحركة. يمكن أن تحكي الصور المتحركة قصة رائعة!

هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي يمكنك القيام بها! كيف تحب التعبير عن نفسك؟

### Lesson 2

نهى : هل سمعت عن هذه المسابقة يا هشام؟ إنها لأي نوع من المشاريع الإبداعية. أود الاشتراك فيها.

هشام : هذا يبدو جيداً. ما الذي ستقدميه؟

نهى : لا أعرف، نشاطي المفضل هو الرسم. أشعر بالسعادة دائماً عندما أرسّم. إذا كنت حزينة أرسّم، عندها أشعر بالتحسن.

هشام : إذا قمت بالرسم فأنا لا أشعر بالسعادة. فأنا لست جيداً في ذلك!

نهى : نعم، أنت على حق! على أية حال، لا يوجد أحد سي في مشروع إبداعى، يمكنك أن تفعل أو تصنع أى شيء تريده. ليس هناك صواب أو خطأ!

هشام : أفضل صنع الأشياء بيدى. أحب النحت أو تصميم نماذج باستخدام مواد قديمة، لكن المفضل لدى هو صناعة الأواني الفخارية. أعتقد أنها مريحة.

نهى : أنا لا أوافق على ذلك. أنا لا أحب صناعة الأواني الفخارية لأنني لا أحب أن أجعل يداي متسخة. أعتقد أنه من غير المريح حقاً أن يكون هناك طين على يداي.

هشام : ولكن إذا كنت ترسمين، فإنك ستجدين ألوان على يديك. نهى : حسناً، نعم، أعتقد أنك على حق. ولحسن الحظ، تختفي الألوان بسرعة عندما أقوم بغسلها.

### Lesson 4. Anish Kapoor's sculptures

"Anish Kapoor's" هو نحات ولد في الهند عام ١٩٥٤ وانتقل إلى لندن بالمملكة المتحدة لدراسة الفن عام ١٩٧٣. يحب كابور استخدام الأشكال الجديدة والمثيرة للاهتمام بالإضافة إلى المواد المختلفة. يصنع Kapoor قطعاً فنية كبيرة جداً للأماكن العامة ويمكن للناس رؤية أعماله الفنية في جميع أنحاء العالم. مجسم الشجرة الطويلة والعين هي أحد المنحوتات الشهيرة "Anish Kapoor"، وهي تقع خارج متحف "Guggenheim" في بلباو، أسبانيا. يبلغ طول هذا التمثال حوالي ١٣ متراً وهو مصنوع من ٧٣ كرة من الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ....

الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ لامع جداً، لذلك عندما تنظر إلى مجسم الشجرة الطويلة والعين، يمكنك رؤية وجهك عدة مرات. ثم ترتيب الكرة بنمط غير منتظم. وهذا يجعلها تبدو مثل الفقاعات وهي تطفو! ...

Kapoor فنان عظيم فهو يفهم الرياضيات جيداً، ويفهم أيضاً المواد الخام. وهذا يعني أنه يستطيع صناعة تماثيل منحوتة التي ستبقى في مكانها لفترة طويلة. على سبيل المثال في مجسم الشجرة طويلة القامة والعين استخدم كابور الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ لأنه مادة قوية جداً. وهو جيد جداً للمنحوتات الخارجية لأنه يظل لامعاً، ولا يؤدي الطقس السيئ إلى إتلافه.

على مر السنين، صنع Kapoor العديد من تماثيل منحوتة الشهيرة الأخرى. تمثال Kapoor الشهير الآخر هو "بوابة السحاب" هو أحد أعمال كابور الشهيرة أيضاً يمكنك رؤيته في شيكاغو، الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية.

بوابة السحاب "عالية جداً، ويمكن للأشخاص التمشية أسفل منها! كما أنها مصنوعة من الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ، مما يعكس السماء والمباني والأشخاص من حولها، مثل مرآة ضخمة. إنه معلم مشهور جداً للزيارة في شيكاغو.



بنى نصب سبيليوس التذكاري عام ١٩٦٧ تخليداً للموسيقار الشهير جان سبيليوس الذي توفي عام ١٩٥٧.  
كان سبيليوس من فنلندا، وهي دولة تقع في شمال أوروبا. لا تزال أعمال سبيليوس تحظى بشعبية حتى يومنا هذا ويتم عزفها في الحفلات الموسيقية والمسارح في جميع أنحاء العالم.  
التمثال إيلّا هيلتونن وهي أيضاً فنانة من فنلندا.  
يتكون التمثال من ٦٠٠ أنبوب فولاذي بأحجام مختلفة في شكل غير منتظم. يبلغ ارتفاعه ٨,٥ متراً وعرضه ١٠,٥ متراً. أرادت هيلتونن أن يبدو شكل التمثال مثل طابع موسيقى سبيليوس يمكنك ان تري التمثال في حديقة سيبيليس في هلسنكي، عاصمة فنلندا.

## Lesson 5.

المحاور : بالبروعة يامازن! الحفل كان مذهلاً! أنت موهوب جداً!  
مازن : شكراً جزيلاً! لقد أحببت، ولكنني أشعر بالتعب دائماً بعد الحفل!  
المحاور : أنا لست مندهشاً. لقد عزفت على الجيتار وقيمت بالغناء لأكثر من ساعة!  
مازن : لقد مر الأمر بسرعة كبيرة. لكن لم يكن أحد يعلم بالمشكلة التي واجهتني قبل الحفل!  
المحاور : مشكلة - ماذا كانت هذه المشكلة؟  
مازن : لم أتمكن من العثور على الجيتار الخاص بي! كنت أتدرب في غرفة مختلفة هذا الصباح ووضعت الجيتار الخاص بي في مكان ما. وبعد ذلك نسيت أين وضعته. لقد بحثت عنه في كل مكان، حتى تحت جميع الكراسي ولكنني لم أتمكن من العثور عليه! قبل خمس دقائق من الحفل، دخلت صديقي الغرفة. لقد عثرت عليه خلف الباب. لقد كنت محظوظاً جداً.

## Lesson 7. Behind the camera

لقد تبقى أسبوعان على العرض المدرسي، وكان الجميع متحمسين. الجميع باستثناء مجدي. قال وليد : "سوف أعزف على البيانو" وقالت نسمة : الكورال سوف يفي أغاني جميلة" وقالت داليا : "وسأقوم بتصميم أزياء للكورال"  
قال سمير : "لقد كتبت مسرحية مضحكة! كان مجدي قلقاً، فهو لا يذهب إلى دروس العزف على البيانو، ولا يحب الغناء وفكر قائلاً : "ماذا سأفعل؟" في طريق العودة إلى المنزل، مر مجدي أمام المتحف. وكان هناك إعلان لمعرض للصور الفوتوغرافية. وفي الإعلان صورة بالأبيض والأسود لرجلاً يعزف البيانو على المسرح. ومعه الجمهور في خلفية الصورة. فكر مجدي قائلاً : هذا مذهش" وشعر وكأنه هناك يستمع إلى الموسيقى.  
في المنزل بدأ مجدي يبحث في الخزائن : سألت الأم : "ماذا تفعل؟" سأل مجدي : "أبي لديه كاميرا جيدة، أليس كذلك؟ هل تعرفين أين هي؟"  
ردت الأم قائلة : وهي تحضر صندوقاً من أحد الرفوف "نعم". لم استخدمها منذ فترة طويلة.

والدك "هل تدرسون التصوير الفوتوغرافي في المدرسة؟"  
قال مجدي : "لا ، لكنني سأتعلم!" وجد مجدي كتب التصوير الفوتوغرافية الخاصة بوالده وقرأ عن الأزرار المختلفة الموجودة في الكاميرا. ثم تعلم كيفية تعديل الصور على الحاسوب لجعلها أفتح أو أغمق.  
كان مجدي متحمساً. في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، اصططحه والده وأمه إلى معرض للصور الفوتوغرافية وبعد المعرض ذهبوا إلى المدينة

وقام مجدي بالتقاط صوراً للأشياء التي رآها. وأخيراً تحدث مجدي مع معلمته قائلاً : "يا أستاذة سلوى، أنا قلق. أنا لا أحب أن أكون على خشبة المسرح. لا أحب الغناء أو التمثيل، ولا أستطيع العزف على آلة موسيقية".

قالت معلمته : "مجدي، هذه فرصة لك للقيام بشئ تستمتع به، وللتعبير عن نفسك. هل يمكنك التفكير في شئ ما؟"  
قال مجدي : "أعلم! يمكنني أن أكون المصور! يمكنني أن أكون على جانبي خشبة المسرح أثناء أداء الفصل العرض. ثم بعد ذلك، يمكنني تعديل الصور لموقع مدرستنا الإلكتروني".  
ابتسمت الأستاذة سلوى وقالت : «أحسننت يامجدي. هذه فكرة رائعة! "تدرب الفصل على آلتهم الموسيقية أدوارهم المسرحية. وفي مساء العرض، كانوا سعداء ومستعدين للأداء. وعندما صعد كل شخص على خشبة المسرح، التقط مجدي الصور.  
عرضت صور مجدي على موقع المدرسة في الأسبوع التالي. "قال والده : "سوف تصبح مصوراً رائعاً يا مجدي".

كان ذلك في اليوم التالي للعرض المدرسي. كان سمير صديق مجدي يزور جدته.

قال سمير : "مرحباً ياجدتي. لقد جئت لزيارتك".  
قالت الجدة : «مرحباً يا سمير، كيف كان العرض المدرسي؟ هل كنت في مسرحية؟"  
قال سمير بحماس : "كان رائعاً ياجدتي، لكنني لم أكن في المسرحية. أنا ومجدي لا نحب التمثيل.

كان مجدي هو المصور للعرض المدرسي ولكن وظيفتي كانت أفضل من ذلك. لقد ساعدت الأستاذ إبراهيم في صنع "الديكور قال سمير بحماس.

سألت الجدة : "الديكور" قال سمير : «الديكور هو الأشياء التي يحتاجها الممثلون على خشبة المسرح لأداء المسرحية بشكل واقعي. "إذا كانت المسرحية تدور حول عائلة في المنزل في غرفة الجلوس، فأنت بحاجة إلى بعض الأثاث مثل الأريكة أو مصباح أو بعض الصور على الحائط. في بعض الأحيان نحصل على الأشياء التي نحتاجها من الوالدين ولكن في بعض الأحيان نصنعها!" قالت الجدة وهي تبدو مندهشة : "أنتم تصنعوها؟"

وضح سمير قائلاً : "نعم، أحب صنع الأشياء يا جدتي. نستخدم الخشب والورق المقوي والورق الملون ... أي شئ! استاذي السيد إبراهيم جيد جداً في صنع الأشياء وأوضح لي ما يجب أن أفعله. قالت الجدة : "هذا يبدو مثيلاً يا سمير. أود أن أرى بعض الأشياء التي صنعتها".

قال سمير : "هذا سهل". وضع مجدي صورته على موقع المدرسة. سأحضر هاتفى و سأريها لكى!"



## Unit 2

### Lesson 1. My fantastic bedroom by Selem

انتقلنا إلى شقة جديدة منذ شهر، وأنا سعيد جداً لأن لدى غرفة نوم جديدة!

أحب غرفتي الجديدة. إنها غرفة منيرة ومريحة للغاية. أشاركها مع أخي ماجد ونحن أصدقاء جيدين.  
لدينا مكتب طويل لأجهزة الحاسوب الخاصة بنا حتى تتمكن من

أداء واجباتنا المدرسية في غرفة نومنا. وهذا أفضل بكثير من القيام بذلك في غرفة المعيشة! هناك الكثير من الضوضاء الصادرة من أختنا الصغيرة والتلفاز!

عندما تنتهي من واجباتنا المدرسية، يمكننا أن نلعب ألعاب الحاسوب مع أصدقائنا - وهذا أمر ممتع للغاية! لعبتي المفضلة هي لعبة إقامة المباني. نشاهد أيضًا أفلام الرسوم المتحركة مع أصدقائنا.

أنا أيضًا أحب تبادل الكتب المصورة، وأحب قراءتها في الفراش. أنا وأصدقائي نتبادلها مرة واحدة في الأسبوع ونتحدث عنها. أنا اتعلم العزف على الكمان في الوقت الحالي، وأتدرب كثيرًا. أنا لست جيدًا بعد، لذلك أحيانًا يشعر أخي بالملل من أدائي الموسيقي، خاصة عندما يكون متعبًا! إنه رياضي جدًا ويلعب الكرة الطائرة كثيرًا، لذلك فهو يقوم بتمارين الضغط في غرفتنا - وغالبًا ما يؤدي هذا التمرين ٣٠ مرة في المساء.

أنا وماجد لدينا العديد من الأصدقاء المشتركين. إنهم جميعًا رائعين. قبل أن تنتقل، كنا نتحدث معهم عبر الإنترنت فقط، ولكن الواضح الآن أفضل حيث لدينا غرفة نوم أكبر. فهم يأتون/ يحضرون إلى منزلنا للتحدث في غرفتنا.

شريف أحد أصدقائنا هو لاعب شطرنج رائع. كلانا يلعب الشطرنج في نادي الشطرنج بالمدرسة. الشطرنج صعب جدًا بالنسبة لي، لكن، لحسن الحظ، شريف يساعدي.

أنا وماجد نحب الألعاب اللوحية. نلعبها مع أصدقائنا في غرفة نومنا ومع عائلتنا في غرفة المعيشة!

غرفة نوم أبي وأمي بجوار غرفتنا. غرفة نومهم بنفس حجم غرفتنا، لكن لديهم حمام خاص بهم. أنا أفضل غرفة نومنا - الشيء المفضل بها لدي هو أن لدينا مساحة لهواياتنا ولأصدقائنا.

## Lesson 2. Amazing appliances

١. أعتقد أن الخلاط هو أفضل جهاز في مطبخ! إذا كان الجو حار غدًا. سوف أصنع عصيرًا بالفواكه والتلج.

٢. استخدمته لصنع مشروب اللبن المخفوق مع أُمي. تستخدمه أُمي أيضًا لصنع الحساء اللذيذ.

٣. هل تعلم أن رجلًا أمريكيًا بولنديًا يدعى Stephen Poplawski اخترع الخلاط عام ١٩٢٢م قام بوضع شفرة حادة في قاع كوب طويل. عندما تدور الشفرة، تقوم بتقطيع الطعام، وأضاف محركًا صغيرًا. قام المحرك بإدارة الشفرة، مما أدى إلي مزج الطعام معًا. استخدم اختراعه الجديد في صنع مشروب اللبن المخفوق.

٤. الخلاطات أيضًا مفيدة جدًا في الطب. علي سبيل المثال، كان الدكتور Jonas Salk عالمًا مشهورًا. في عام ١٩٥٣، استخدم الخلاط لصنع لقاح. لقد أنقذ لقاحه ملايين الأرواح. لن يمرض الناس إذا حصلوا على اللقاح.

٥. في الوقت الحاضر، يختلف الخلاط قليلًا عن العشرينات، فهناك خلاطات مصنوعة من البلاستيك والزجاج والمعدن. وبعض الخلاطات يمكنها تسخين الطعام أيضًا!

هل لديك خلاط في المنزل؟ هل تستخدم الخلاط كثيرًا أم قليلًا؟ ماذا ستفعل بدون الخلاط الخاص بك في المطبخ؟

## Lesson 3. Mariam's day at school

**الأم:** أهلا مريم، كيف كان يومك؟

**مريم:** مرحبًا أُمي! لقد كان يومًا غريبًا، في الواقع. لقد أنقطع التيار الكهربائي! كنت أنا وفصلي ننظر إلي السبورة التفاعلية، عندما اختفت فجأة جميع المعلومات.

**الأم:** حقًا؟ هذا غريب! ماذا فعلت الأستاذة أميرة؟

**مريم:** حسنًا، في البداية حصلت علي وصلة كهربائية وجربت مقبس طاقة مختلفًا، لكن ذلك لم يكن يعمل أيضًا.

**الأم:** إذن، لم يكن هناك كهرباء! ماذا حدث؟

**مريم:** لم تتمكن من أداء الدرس الذي خططت له الأستاذة أميرة. لذلك طلبت منا جميعًا أن نجلس في دائرة ونتحدث عن أهمية الكهرباء في حياتنا.

**الأم:** دعيي أضمن - الجميع يعتقد أنها مهمة لألعاب الحاسوب! **مريم:** ههه ههه! في الواقع لا. كان لدينا جميعًا الكثير من الأفكار المختلفة. لقد كانت مناقشة مثيرة للاهتمام حقًا.

ضحني: في رأيي، الكهرباء هي الأكثر فائدة في أوقات فراغنا. أنا أحب حاسوبي المحمول! حيث أقوم بعمل واجبي المنزلي عليه! ثم أَلعب ألعاب الفيديو مع أخي. أحب أيضًا مشاهدة التلفاز مع جدتي في المساء.

**خالد:** أعرف ما تقصدينه، لكن أعتقد أن الكهرباء هي الأهم للإضاءة. أنا لا أحب الظلام، ونحتاج إلي أضواء في المساء.

**سلمي:** لا أوافق. أعتقد أن الكهرباء أكثر أهمية في المطبخ. لا يمكننا استخدام أجهزة الغلاية الكهربائية الخاصة بنا بدون كهرباء، أو الخلاطات أو التلاجة الخاصة بنا!

تميم: ماذا عن المواصلات؟ بعض الناس يمتلكون سيارات كهربائية، كما تحتاج محطات الحافلات والمطارات إلي الكهرباء، أيضًا.

## Lesson 4. The Day the Bills broke down!

انه عام ٢٠٨٩ والحياة علي كوكب الأرض جميلة!

يعيش البشر حياة سهلة لأن كل عائلة لديها بيل روبوت الذي يعمل ٢٤ ساعة يوميًا لأجلهم. يقوم بيل روبوت بكل مهامهم المنزلية.

ولكن في هذا اليوم منذ عام مضي حدث شيء ردي. بدأ اليوم بشكل طبيعي. في استراليا بعض أجهزة بيل روبوت كانت تكوي الملابس

لاصحابها ليذهبوا للعمل. في ايطاليا بعض أجهزة بيل روبوت كانت تصنع مخفوق الحليب يهدوء وأخري كانت تصلح السيارات. في مصر. كانت أجهزة بيل روبوت تصنع الكشري للغداء اليوم التالي.

ولكن فجأة توقف صوت هذه الأجهزة حول العالم. كل أجهزة بيل روبوت تعطلت. وسقطوا علي الأرض انطفئت إضاءاتهم.

شعرت عائلة في الأسكندرية بالصدمة عندما رأت جهاز بيل روبوت الذي يملكونه ملقى علي أرضية المطبخ. حاولوا ابقاظه.

قالت الأم: "بيل! ماذا حدث؟ نحن ننتظر الكشري!" لكن لم يتحدث بيل. بدأ الابن الأصغر هشام في البكاء وقال "أحتاج إلي زي مدرسي نظيف غداً. ومن سوف يكوي البنطلون المدرسي لي."

الآب "هذا امر سيء جدًا! لقد برمجت بيل ليصلح سيارتي ويغير بطارية السيارة." قال الآب "ماذا سوف أفعل الآن؟"

كان الجميع يبدو قلق جدًا، لكن الابنة فريدة قالت "سوف نقوم ببيع بعض المهام المنزلية بأنفسنا مثلما كانوا يصنعون ذلك في الماضي. سوف نبحث علي الانترنت. ونعرف كيف نصنع ذلك. هذا هو ما أخبرني به جدي الأكبر أن الناس اعتادوا علي القيام به."

بدأت العائلة في محاولة تعلم أشياء من الفيديوها. لقد تعلموا كيفية استخدام الخلاط وصنعوا مخفوق الحليب.

تعلمت الأم كيفية استخدام المايكرويف وتمكنوا من تسخين بعض الطعام. لم يحبوا هذا كثيرًا لأنهم اعتادوا أن يصنع بيل الوجبات للعائلة. حاول الآب تعلم كيفية إصلاح سيارته لكن كان الأمر صعبًا جدًا. ولم يفهم كيفية تغيير بطارية السيارة علي الاطلاق. كان الأمر معقد جدًا. أدى هشام بشكل جيد. لقد تعلم هشام بسرعة كيف يكوي ملابسه المدرسية بنفسه!

من حسن الحظ قام مهندس كمبيوتر بحل المشكلة اليوم التالي وبدأت كل أجهزة بيل في العمل في مصر كانت أجهزة بيل مشغولة في تنظيف السيارة لتكون جاهزة للعمل يوم الأحد. أصبحت الحياة طبيعية مرة



أخرى. علي الرغم من ذلك البشر الآن مستعدين في حالة أن تعطلت أجهزة بيل مرة أخرى يومًا ما.

## Lesson 6. Caring for your cat

- كيف يمكنني أن أجعل قطي تشعر بالراحة في المنزل؟  
قدم الكثير من الاهتمام لها لتشعر بالأمان. يجب عليك أن تلاحظها، بمعنى أنك تحرك يدك علي ظهرها أو أسفل الذقن. تحب القط ذلك!
- أين تحب القط النوم؟  
تحب القط النوم في سرير دافئ ومريح لكن أحيانًا تنام علي الكنبه فقط! لا تيقظها. فهم يحتاجون للنوم حوالي ١٥ ساعة كل يوم!
- ماذا تأكل القط؟  
تأكل القط وجبات صغيرة في أوقات مختلفة من اليوم لا يجب أن تقدم لها الكثير من اللبن لتشربه. اللبن ضار لهم. الماء أفضل من اللبن.
- ما المعدات التي تحتاجها القط؟  
تحتاج القط إلي عمود خدش. وهو عبارة عن عمود خشب قوي يمكن أن تشد القط مخالبيها عليها. أيضًا تحب القط الألعاب لتلعب بها. من الأفكار الجيدة أن تضع طوق عليها اسم وعنوان القط حول عنقها. حتي إذا ضلت القطعة الطريق سيتمكن أي شخص من أن يعيدها لك للمنزل.
- كم مرة يجب أن تذهب القط للطبيب البيطري؟  
يجب أن تذهب القط للطبيب البيطري مرة سنويًا للتطعيمات. هذا يحافظ عليها من الإصابة بالأمراض. إذا اعتنيت بقطتك بشكل جيد سيكون لديك صديق مغطى بالفراء في حياتك.

## Caring for your turtle

- ماذا تأكل السلاحف؟  
تحب السلاحف تناول الزهور والنباتات. يمكن أيضًا أن تشتري لها الطعام الخاص بالسلاحف.
- كيف أجعل سلحفتي تشعر بالراحة في المنزل؟  
تحتاج منازل السلاحف إلي مكان كبير جدًا. تحتاج السلاحف الأكبر حجمًا لمساحات أكبر. تحتاج السلاحف الي تربة نظيفة لتحفر بها أيضًا.
- ما المعدات التي تحتاجها السلاحف؟  
أحيانًا تحتاج السلاحف إلي مصباح للتدفئة. هذا عبارة عن إضاءة خاصة لتحافظ علي بقاء السلاحف لطيفة ودافئة.
- أين تنام السلاحف؟  
تحب السلاحف النوم في مكان آمن ومظلم حيث لا تتغير درجة الحرارة.

## Caring for your indoor plants

- أين يمكنني أن أشتري نبات يعيش داخل المنزل؟  
يمكنك شراء النباتات التي تعيش داخل المنزل من السوبر ماركت وبائع الزهور ومراكز الحدائق. هؤلاء هم محلات تباع العديد من النباتات. ربما من الأفضل أن تشتري من مركز الحديقة لأن البائعين هناك يعرفون كيفية الاعتناء بالنباتات ويستطيعوا أن يقدموا لك نصائح مفيدة. تأكد أنك تعرف اسم نوع نباتك لتستطيع معرفة المزيد عنه.
- أين يجب أن أضع النباتات التي تعيش في المنزل؟  
بعض النباتات تحتاج أن تكون في مكان دافئ ومشمس به الكثير من أشعة الشمس بينما تفضل نباتات أخرى مكان بارد قليلًا ليس مشمس. ابحث علي الانترنت لتعرف أفضل مكان لنباتك. معظم النباتات لا تحب أن تحركها. لذلك قم بإيجاد أفضل مكان واتركها هناك.
- هل تحتاج النباتات للطعام؟

نعم! أفضل وقت هو في فصل الربيع والصيف.  
قم بإطعامها بالأسمدة. السماد هو طعام مميز للنباتات.  
اقرأ التعليمات بحذر لأن الكثير من السماد يمكن أن يكون ضار بالنبات.

- كم مرة يجب أن أسقي النبات؟  
بعض النباتات لا تحتاج الكثير من المياه بينما تحتاج أخرى لمياه أكثر. يمكنك البحث علي الانترنت للحصول علي معلومات أكثر. إذا لم تكن تعرف. من الأفضل أن تعطي النبات القليل جدًا من المياه وليس الكثير جدًا من المياه.
- كيف يجب أن أنظف النباتات التي تعيش داخل المنزل؟  
استخدم فرشاة ناعمة أو قطعة قماش قطنية لتزيل الغبار من أوراق النبات. مما يعني أنك تنظف القاذورات الجافة من الأوراق. قم برش النباتات ذات الأوراق السمكية بالمياه فذلك سيحافظ عليهم بصحة جيدة.
- هل تعلم؟  
أنتك إذا حافظت علي نباتاتك سعيدة وبصحة جيدة سوف تعيش لعدة سنوات.

## Lesson 7. The special house

- سامح نادين في اجازة من الدراسة في المنزل مع والديهم. ذات صباح كان سامح في حجرة المعيشة يلعب مع قطته الصغيرة. وفجأة قفزت القطه من فوق الكرسي لداخل حفرة صغيرة في الحائط! وضع سامح يده داخل الحفرة ليحضرها، لكن لم يشعر سامح سوا ببعض الورق بالداخل. قام بسحب ورقة وكانت ورقة قديمة. وعليها كانت رسالة مكتوبة بخط يد طفل تقول الرسالة: أهلاً أنا منيرة! أعيش هنا.
- شعر سامح بالفضول. في اليوم التالي، كانت السماء تمطر. كان يشعر سامح وأخته نادين بالملل. فقال سامح "هيا بنا نذهب لأعلي وننظر في غرفة الضيوف.
- في غرفة الضيوف وجدوا بعض الصناديق القديمة. نظر سامح في واحد منها ووجد منزل صغير ودمية. كانت الدمية جميلة وتحتها كان هناك كارت عيد ميلاد مكتوب عليه: إلي منيرة في عيد ميلادها، مع الكثير من الحب، جدتك.
- في ذلك الوقت نادا عليهم ابيهم في الطابق السفلي. قال سامح "أبي، من هي منيرة؟" كان يبدو علي الأب الصدمة. وسال سامح "لماذا تسأل عن ذلك؟"
- رد عليه سامح قائلاً: "أنظر إلي هذه الدمية وهذا الكارت!" قال الأب وهو ينظر إلي تلك الأشياء "لا أصدق ذلك! دعني أخبرك عن تاريخ هذا المنزل. لقد تم بناءه من الطوب والحجر في الخمسينات. جدتي [جدتكم الأكبر] عاشت هنا مع والدتها وأبيها وخمسة أخوة وأخوات.
- قالت نادين: "يا للعجب! هل تعتقد أن المنزل كان صغيرًا جدًا عليهم؟" قال الأب "نعم. فقد كان هناك ثمانية أشخاص وهناك ثلاثة غرف للنوم فقط." سأل سامح "هل تعتقد أنهم كانوا سعداء؟"
- قال الأب. "أعتقد أنهم كانوا سعداء مثلما نحن الآن."
- سألت نادين قائلة "لكن هل المنزل مختلف الآن؟"
- قال الأب "حسنًا، ليس حقًا. فالجدران لها لون مختلف لكن هذا هو الاختلاف فقط. أنا سعيد أنه لم يتغير لأن لدي ذكريات رائعة في نشأتي هنا أيضًا."
- قال سامح "لكنك لم تخبرنا حتي الآن من هي منيرة!"
- قال الأب "أنكم تعرف من هي بالفعل. منيرة هي جدتكم الكبيرة أي والدة جدتكم! أظن أنها أول مرة تسمعون أسمها الأول. الأشياء التي وجدتها هي أشياء من طفولتها. أنا سعيد جدًا إنها لدينا! شكرًا لكليكم!"



## Unit 3

### Lesson 1. Classroom of the world

الفصول الدراسية في العالم  
تختلف الفصول الدراسية في كل مدرسة. ها هما مكانان والتي  
تكون بهم الفصول الدراسية مختلفة قليلاً.  
الفصول الدراسية علي الأسطح!  
في مصر، تتلقى بعض الفصول دروسها في حديقة علي سطح المدرسة!  
يقوم مشروع "الشجرة المدرسية" بتصميم حدائق واسطح خضراء  
للمدارس في مصر.  
الأسطح الخضراء هي حدائق في أعلى المبني تجلب الأسطح  
الخضراء الطبيعة إلي المدينة. كما أنها تقوم بتنقية الهواء وتبريده  
هذا يعني أنها مفيدة للبيئة.  
يقوم المشروع بتعليم الطلاب والمدرسين كيفية زراعة حديقة علي  
السطح. ويتعرف الطلاب والمدرسين علي النباتات التي تنمو بشكل  
جيد في الطقس الحار والجاف.  
في عام ٢٠١٧، بدأت الفصول الدراسية في إحدى المدارس بالذهاب  
إلي أسطحها الخضراء لتلقي الدروس. أعتقد الناس الذين قاموا  
بهذا المشروع أنه كان فكرة رائعة!  
في عام ٢٠١٩، قاموا ببناء أول فصل دراسي لهم علي السطح وتم  
وضع المكاتب في الظل ولكن لم يكن هناك جدران.  
تمتع كل من الطلبة والمدرسين بمساحة وكان بإمكانهم رؤية  
الزهور والنباتات. وفقاً لمشروع "الشجرة المدرسية" فان حدائق  
الاسطح تساعد الطلبة في العديد من مدارس المدينة.  
فالاماكن الخضراء في الهواء الطلق تجعلنا نتمتع بالهدوء والصحة  
وهذا عظيم للعملية التعليمية.  
الفصول الدراسية المتنقلة!  
في شمال سيبيريا، يتلقى بعض الطلاب دروسهم في خيام وسط  
الجليد والتنج!  
معظم الناس في شمال سيبيريا هم من البدو الرحالة مما يعني  
أنهم لا يعيشوا في مكان واحد. يتنقل هؤلاء البدو في زلاجات عبر  
الأراضي المتجمدة وينامون في خيام.  
يعتني البدو بحيوانات الرنة ويأخذوه إلي الأماكن التي يتواجد بها  
الطعام.  
إذا كيف يتعلم أطفالهم؟  
هناك طريقتان.  
الطريقة الأولى: هي ذهاب بعض الأطفال إلي مدرسة داخلية.  
وتكون هذه الأطفال بعيدة عن أسرهم لعدة أشهر كل عام. ولا  
يستطيع هؤلاء الأطفال تعلم المهارات التقليدية من والديهم  
وغالباً ما ينسون لغة ثقافتهم.  
الطريقة الثانية: هي المدرسة المتنقلة [الرحالة]. وهي المدرسة  
التي تنتقل [تسافر] مع العائلات. وتكون الفصول في هذه المدرسة  
خيام علي الجليد أو حجلات متنقلة علي عجلات.  
يدرس الأطفال في هذه المدرسة المواد الدراسية مثل الرياضيات  
والعلوم وعلم الحاسب الآلي. بالإضافة إلي ذلك دراسة لغتهم  
ومهاراتهم التقليدية. يكون الجدول المدرسي مرناً فذلك يستطيع  
الأطفال مساعدة عائلاتهم في الأعمال المنزلية.  
يشعر الأطفال في المدرسة المتنقلة بالسعادة لأنهم يكونوا بالقرب  
من عائلاتهم ويحصلوا علي تعليم جيد. يتعلم الأطفال كل شيء عن  
كيفية المعيشة في أرضهم الجليدية.

### Lesson 2. How does Lilly go to school ?

كيف تذهب ليلي إلي المدرسة؟  
مرحباً اسمي ليلي، وأذهب إلي المدرسة المتوسطة في سان  
فرانسيسكو، الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية. بدأت مدرسة في روضة  
الأطفال عندما كنت في السادسة من عمري والآن عمري أحد  
عشر عامًا وأنا في الصف السادس. أحب مدرستي. عندما كنت في  
روضة الأطفال، كنا نلعب كثيرًا وكان هناك الكثير من الألعاب داخل  
الفصل الدراسي. الآن في الصف السادس نقوم بإداء أنشطة كتابية  
أكثر وندرس مواد دراسية شيقة أكثر من مثل مادة تكنولوجيا  
المعلومات والاتصالات. أحب استخدام أجهزة الكمبيوتر!  
نحن نذهب إلي المدرسة من يوم الاثنين إلي يوم الجمعة. ليس  
من الضروري أن ارتدي زي مدرسي ولكن يجب أن تكون ملابسني  
وأحذيتي نظيفة. تبدأ المدرسة في الثامنة صباحًا وتنتهي في الثالثة  
مساءً. كثيرًا ما أذهب إلي المدرسة سيرا علي الأقدام عندما يكون  
الجو مشمسًا وجافًا. وأحيانًا استقل الحافلة مع اصدقائي. لدينا  
ساعة لتناول وجبة الغداء وعادة أحضرها من المنزل. أتناول  
الطعام داخل الكافيتريا أو بالخارج في الصف.

### Lesson 3. School clubs

النادي الرياضي  
- تدرينا اليوم بالداخل في النصف ساعة الأولي. أولًا كان علينا أن  
نركض ذهاتنا وإياتنا في الملعب عشرون.  
مرة. ثم تسلقنا الحبل. كان هذا صعبًا حقًا. قمنا بعد ذلك بالجري  
في سباق ٤٠٠ متر بالخارج. أحب الجري ولكنه يجعلني متعبًا جدًا.  
قمنا بعد ذلك باللعب لمدة ١٥ دقيقة وكان هذا رائعًا. لقد فاز فريقني!  
نادي التصوير  
لقد قمنا الاسبوع الماضي بنزهة في الحديقة.  
وكان حينما يشير معلمنا إلي شيء ما، نقم بالتقاط صورة له. ولكن  
لم يكن في استطاعتنا سوي التقاط صورة واحدة له! لذلك، كان  
علينا النظر بحرص وعلينا ان نقرر اين نقف. لقد كان الأمر ممتع  
وهذا ما جعلني متحمس للتصوير.  
عندما قمنا بمقارنة الصور بعد ذلك، كانت الصور مختلفة حقًا.  
- تذهب نادبة إلي نادي الموسيقى حيث يغنون الأغاني ويعزفون  
علي الآلات.  
يتعلموا في نادي الموسيقى أغاني من جميع انحاء العالم. في نهاية  
الفصل الدراسي يقيمون حفلًا موسيقيًا لوالديهم.  
- يذهب سامر إلي نادي الطبخ.  
كل اسبوع في نادي الطبخ يقومون باعداد وجبة من بلدة مختلفة.  
يقوموا بالتقاط صورًا لهذه الوجبات للاحاقها بكتاب خاص  
بوصفات الطهي. يمكن للمشاركين في نادي الطبخ اخذ الطعام الي  
منزلهم ليتناولوا مع عائلاتهم.  
- يذهب مالك إلي نادي السباحة ثلاث مرات اسبوعيًا مما  
يجعله قويًا ويتمتع بصحة جيدة. ويقوم مالك في بعض الأحيان  
بالمسابقات أيضًا.  
- يستمتع نادر بالذهاب إلي نادي الدراما. يتعلموا هناك  
المسرحيات ويقوموا بإدائها امام والديهم. في بعض الأحيان يقوموا  
بصناعة ازياء خاصة ليرتديها الممثلون.

### "Poster" Art club !

نادي الفن!  
يعلم الجميع أن الفن مفيد لعقلك.  
فيجعلك الفن مسترخيًا وسعيًا.  
تعال إلي غرفة الفنون الساعة الواحدة ظهرًا أيام الثلاثاء لتتعلم  
الرسم والتلوين.



## Tennis is terrific !

التنس رائع !  
التنس رياضة رائعة. تجعلك رياضة التنس بصحة جيدة وسعيدًا!  
كل أربعاء في تمام الساعة الرابعة مساءً نقدم دروس خاصة برياضة  
التنس.  
انضم إلي نادينا لتتعلم مهارة جديدة وتتقابل مع أشخاص جديدة.

## Lesson 4 : Green City School Open Day

اليوم المفتوح لمدرسة المدينة الخضراء  
في مدرسة المدينة الخضراء، نحن متحمسون لمساعدة البيئة.  
تعال واكتشف لماذا نحن المدرسة الأكثر خضرة في المدينة !  
نرحب بالطلاب الجدد وأسراهم للانضمام إلينا في يومنا المفتوح في  
٢٥ مايو.  
- جدول اليوم المفتوح :

٩ صباحًا يصل الطلاب والعائلات الجدد إلى المدرسة. تقديم من  
قبل مدير المدرسة

١٠ صباحًا جولة في مباني المدرسة  
أولًا : قم بزيارة مكتبتنا صديقة البيئة الجديدة. لماذا  
هي صديقة للبيئة ؟ لأن كل الكهرباء تأتي من الألواح  
الشمسية الموجودة على السطح ثم تتوجه إلى غرفة  
إعادة التدوير. هذا هو المكان الذي يمكننا فيه إعادة  
تدوير الورق والبلاستيك والمواد الأخرى.  
شاهد عرضًا توضيحيًا حول كيفية فرز النفايات من  
فصولنا الدراسية.

بعد ذلك تعال وشاهد ملعبنا البيئي.  
يتكون إطار التسلق في الغالب من مواد مُعاد تدويرها.  
يوجد أيضًا مسار طبيعي حول الملعب، حيث يمكننا  
التعرف على النباتات والحيوانات والحشرات.

١٢ ظهرًا استمتع بوجبة غداء لذيذة في حديقة مدرستنا، حيث نزرع  
زهورنا وفواكهنا وخضرواتنا.

١ بعد الظهر هل لديك أي أسئلة ؟ هذه فرصتك لسؤال طلاب  
وُمعلمي المدرسة الخضراء !  
يوجد موقف سيارات صغير، لكننا نشجعك على المشي أو  
ركوب الدراجة أو القდوم بالحافلة !

## Lesson 5. "The bridge to school"

جزرًا إلى المدرسة  
- استلقت لنا مستيقظة تستمع إلي الرياح والمطر. استمرت  
العاصفة طوال الليل.  
ثم، عندما اشترقت الشمس، سمعت لنا صوت اصطدام. ركضت لنا  
إلى النافذة. وسألت اختها سارة "ما هذا؟". نظرت لنا إلى النهر القريب  
من منزلهم وقالت "أوه لا ! لقد انهار الجسر!" كانت القرية التي تعيش  
بها لنا وسارة صغيرة وتحيط بها جبال شديدة الانحدار.  
وكان ذلك الجسر الذي يمر فوق النهر هو أسرع طريق للوصول إلى  
المدينة، حيث المدرسة والمتاجر والأطباء والمركز الرياضي. ركض  
الاختان إلى المطبخ ليخبروا والديهم. قالت الأم "نقد استمعت للراديو.  
وقالوا أن العاصفة ستوقف قريبًا." وبعد ذلك يمكننا أن نري ما حدث."  
وأخيرًا، توقف المطر، وتوجهت لنا وعائلتها إلى النهر. وكان هناك  
اشخاص اخرون أيضًا.  
اشار والد لنا إلى الجسر المكسور وقال لن يمكننا الذهاب إلى

المدينة أو المدرسة. سألت لنا "وماذا علينا أن نفعل ؟"  
في ذلك اليوم أضطر الأختان للبقاء في المنزل وأرسل اليهم المعلم  
مهام [عملاً] للقيام بها عبر الانترنت.  
في صباح اليوم التالي . وصلت حافلة مدرسية إلى ساحة القرية.  
قالت سارة "أنظري يا لنا ، الحافلة هنا!"  
قالت لنا "الحافلة ؟ لكن الطريق طويل جدًا!" قالت سارة " أعلم،  
ولكن هذا هو الشيء الوحيد الذي يمكننا القيام به." أخذت سارة  
حقبتها وركضت إلى الباب.

نظرت لنا إلى الجسر عند صعودها الحافلة رؤيتها للجسر المكسور  
جعلها حزينة. ستختلف حياتهم حتي يقوم شخص ما باصلاح هذا  
الجسر. لقد استمتعت لنا بالمرور عبره في كل صباح، والمشى أعلى  
التل علي الجانب الآخر. كانت لنا في كثير من الأحيان أول من يصل  
إلى المدرسة. ولكن الآن سوف تتأخر! استغرقت الرحلة بالحافلة إلى  
المدرسة ساعتين. كان الجو حارًا وكانت حركة المرور بطيئة.  
فشعرت لنا بالنعاس والحزن.

عندما وصلت لنا المدرسة طلبت استخدام الكمبيوتر وقامت  
بكتابة خطاب عن العاصفة والجسر المكسور. وعندما وصلت لنا  
للمنزل التقطت صورة للجسر.

قالت لها معلمتها أن كتابة خطاب ليراه الجميع فكرة رائعة، لأن  
الجميع يحب أن يعرف عن الجسر ويحاول المساعدة. قامت  
المعلمة بمساعدة لنا في إرسال الخطاب والصور الي الصحف  
والمواقع الالكترونية في جميع أنحاء البلاد.  
استمرت الحافلة في نقل لنا واصدقائها إلى المدرسة والذي فاجئهم،  
عندما عادوا إلى المنزل رأوا المهندسين وعمال البناء عند النهر  
ابتسموا للأطفال. قال رجل يرتدي معطف أصفر "لقد سمعنا عن  
خطابكم والآن نحن نشيد جسرًا جديدًا لكي تتمكنوا من الذهاب إلى  
المدرسة بسرعة. وبعد مرور أسبوع كان هناك جسر معدني جديد.  
قالت سارة "أحسن يا لنا. لقد ساعد خطابك الجميع!"

## Lesson 6. "Are school trips important ? by Nesma, aged 12"

هل الرحلات المدرسية مهمة ؟ بقلم نسمة، ١٢ عامًا.  
اعتقد أن الرحلات المدرسية هي تجارب تعليمية مثيرة. أولًا يمكننا  
ان نتعلم الكثير من خلال زيارة اماكن جديدة.  
عندما نتعلم عن شيئًا ما في الفصل الدراسي ثم نراه في الحياة  
الواقعية، فأنا نفهمه بشكل أفضل. بالإضافة إلى ذلك، غالبًا ما  
تكون الرحلات المدرسية شيقة أكثر من مجرد القراءة عن الأشياء  
في الكتب أو مشاهدة مقاطع الفيديو.  
وأخيرًا، يمكننا مواصلة التعلم عندما نعود إلى الفصل الدراسي بعد  
الرحلة الدراسية. يمكننا عمل مشروع عن ما رأيناه في الرحلة.  
باختصار، تعتبر الرحلات المدرسية جزء مهم جدًا من العملية التعليمية.  
وفي اعتقادي علينا أن نحاول الذهاب في رحلة مدرسية واحدة كل عام.

## Is studying the past important ?

هل دراسة الماضي مهمة ؟  
أعتقد ان دراسة الماضي تساعدنا في فهم الحاضر. في رأيي، من  
المهم أن ندرك كيف ساهمت أحداث الماضي في صناعة الحاضر.  
بداية، يمكننا أن نتعلم الكثير من خلال دراسة الماضي. فيساعدنا  
التاريخ في فهم مجتمعا والثقافات الأخرى لأننا نتعرف علي الحياة  
في الماضي والفنانين والعلماء ورجال السياسة المهمين.  
بالإضافة إلى ذلك نتعلم كيف ولماذا تغيرت الحياة علي مر السنين.



## Unit 4

### Lesson 1. Why we're all special by Reem

أستاذة مني سألتنا اليوم "كيف نحن مختلفين عن بعضنا البعض؟" هذا سؤال سهل الإجابة عليه ! أسر طويل جدًا. هو أطول من التلاميذ الآخرين في الصف الدراسي. أنا قصيرة جدًا. لدي عينان خضراء اللون وأسرها عيناها بنية اللون. شعر سليم مجعد لكن وليد شعره مفرد جدًا وغير مجعد ويرتدي نظارة. ترتدي أنجي تقويم الأسنان لتساعد أسنانها علي أن تكون مستقيمة. تستخدم أمل كرسي متحرك لأنها لا تستطيع المشي جيدًا. أمينة ترتدي سماعة الأذن لان لديها مشاكل في السمع.

لدينا عائلات مختلفة أيضًا. لدي ثلاثة أخوات وامل أفضل صديقاتي لها أخوين ! صديقتي داليا تحب الرياضة لكي أفضل دروس اللغات. بعد ذلك سالتنا الأستاذة مني أن أخبر صديق لنا عن شيء يجعله مميز. أخبرتها أنني أحب شعرها المجعد وطريقتها في مساعدتي في مادة الرياضيات. فهي أفضل تلميذة في الصف في مادة الرياضيات ! وهي أخبرتني أنها تحب طريقي في جعلها تضحك عندما تكون حزينة قليلًا. قالت الأستاذة مني "تخيلوا عالم به جميعنا متشابهين تمامًا، كيف سيكون هذا العالم؟"

قال شريف "في الواقع أنا أعتقد أن هذا سيكون ممل إلى حد ما". وقالت سالي : "أن هذا سيكون مملًا حقًا". ثم قالت الأستاذة مني "وتخيلوا أن نكون جميعنا بارعين في نفس الأشياء؟" فقلت لها "سيكون حينها هذا العالم غير مثير إطلاقًا".

قالت الأستاذة مني : "من الجيد أن يكون كل شخص مختلف عن الآخر، فنحن لا نبدو متشابهين تمامًا لأن عائلتنا أيضًا مختلفة. البعض منا طويل القامة والبعض قصير القامة، البعض منا شعره مجعد والبعض لديهم شعر مفرد. البعض منا لديه اثنين من الأخوة والأخوات، والبعض لديهم ثلاثة. البعض يبرع في الموسيقى، وآخرون يبرعون في الرياضة". الجميع اتفق مع رأي الأستاذة مني. ثم قالت الأستاذة مني "أن الشيء المهم هو أن نرعي بعضنا البعض في الصف الدراسي. لا يجب أن يكون الأشخاص قاسيين تجاه أي شخص بسبب كونه مختلف عنهم. مدرستنا هي مكان للجميع، فجميعنا نتساوي في الأهمية".

سألت أنجي "لكن ماذا يجب علينا أن نفعل إذا رأينا شخص يتعامل بشكل قاسي في المدرسة ؟ لقد رأيت شخص يزعج طارق منذ بضعة أيام لانه نسي نظارته ولذا لم يستطع الرؤية جيدًا".

قالت الأستاذة مني " في كل مرة يجب أن تأتي لتخبرني أو تخبر أي معلم آخر. يجب علينا في المدرسة أن نساعد بعضنا البعض".

### Lesson 2

اليوم دعي معلمنا شخص مثير للاهتمام يدعي استاذ كمال للحضور للصف الدراسي ليتحدث معنا. أخبرنا استاذنا كمال عن أفضل الطرق للتواصل مع الأشخاص الذين يعانون من مشكلات في السمع. في البداية سألتنا ما هي الأصوات التي نسمعها كل يوم. كان لدينا الكثير من الأفكار. قال صديقي آدم أنه سمع الآخرين يتحدثون، وقلت أنا أنني سمعت صوت القط الذي نملكه في الصباح !

ثم سألتنا استاذ كمال ماذا نعتقد سوف يحدث إذا لم تكن قادرين علي السمع جيدًا. هذا السؤال جعلنا نفكر حقًا ! سألت آدم اذا ما كنا سنكون قادرين علي سماع الأصوات العالية.

يعتقد بعض الناس أن الحاضر ممتع وشيق أكثر من الماضي ولكي لا اتفق معهم. فالتاريخ شيق ومثير لأنه مليء بالقصص الرائعة والأشخاص المثيرة للاهتمام.

وأخيرًا يساعدنا التاريخ علي التعلم من أخطاء الماضي حتي لا نكرر نفس الأخطاء في المستقبل.

خلاصة القول، اعتقد أن دراسة التاريخ جزء مهم من تعليمنا فيساعدنا التاريخ علي التعلم من الماضي ويساعدنا فهم لماذا وكيف تتغير الأشياء.

### Lesson 7. "The doctor comes to school"

لم يرغب "Nebsin" من الاستيقاظ [النهوض]. فكانت الشمس مشرقة ولكن سريره كان مريحًا. ناد الأب "Nebsin"، حان وقت المدرسة! ذهب "Nebsin" إلي المطبخ وكانت الأم تعد الأقطار وكان أخوه يلعب. قال "Nebsin" "لماذا يجب علينا الذهاب إلي المدرسة ؟" "Babu" يلعب طوال اليوم حياته سهلة".

قالت والدته "سيبدأ "Babu" الدراسة العام المقبل عندما يبلغ السابعة من عمره". قال الأب "أنا ذاهب إلي القصر يا "Nebsin". دعنا نسير معًا. غادر الأب و"Nebsin" المنزل. كان والد "Nebsin" كاتب فكان يقضي طوال اليوم يكتب عما يحدث في بلاط الفرعون. سأل "Nebsin" والده "هل كنت تحب المدرسة يا أبي؟" بالطبع أريد أن أتعلم القراءة والكتابة، كما تفعل أنت. "لماذا اردت أن تكون كاتبًا؟ فرد الأب وقال "لقد كان والدي كاتبًا وهكذا جدي. أنها مهنة مهمة. ستعرف ماذا تريد أن تصبح يومًا ما".

كان "Nebsin" في حيرة من أمره ولم يعرف بعد ما هي الوظيفة التي يريد القيام بها في المستقبل. وفي وقت لاحق من ذلك الصباح ، كان "Nebsin" يجلس علي الأرض، يستمع إلي المعلم ويكتب علي اللوح الخشبي الخاص به. فجأة قفز صبي وبدأ بالصراخ وكان المعلم مصدوم وقال له "أجلس" وصاح شخص "هناك ثعبان!". فنظر الجميع. فكان هناك ثعبان بني صغير يتحرك علي أرضية الفصل. حاول الصبي أن يلقي الثعبان بعيدًا لكن الثعبان عض يده وصرخ الصبي. قال المعلم "أسرع ، يا "Nebsin" ! واحضر الطيبة، ستعرف ما يجب القيام به".

ركض "Nebsin" وصبي آخر إلي مبني الطيبة. كانت الطيبة تجلس علي مكتب عليه لفات [مجموعة] من ورق البردي. عندما دخلوا المكتب، كانت الطيبة تقرأ وتسجل الملاحظات. فصاح "Nebsin" "ساعدنا من فضلك، لقد عض الثعبان صديقنا!" أخذت الطيبة حقيبتها وبعض المخطوطات من ورق البردي. وركضوا إلي المدرسة، حيث كان الصبي يبكي كانت يده حمراء اللون وملتهبة.

سأل المعلم الطيبة "هل سيكون بخير؟" سألت الطيبة وهي تفحص يد الصبي "ما نوع هذا الثعبان؟". قال "Nebsin" "أنه ثعبان صغير، لونه بني به حلقات غامقة". نظرت الطيبة إلي أحدي لفات ورق البردي وقالت "حسنًا. هذا الثعبان ليس سام".

أخرجت الطيبة بعض الأعشاب من حقيبتها ووضعتهم في زجاجة زيت وهزتها ثم سكبت السائل علي قطعة قماش. قالت الطيبة "ضع هذه مكان العضة". ستؤلمك لمدة قليلة ولكن لن تمرض". لقد كان "Nebsin" في ذهول. كان ينظر بينما الطيبة تحزم مخطوطات البردي وحقيبتها. سأل "Nebsin" "معذرة، كيف تعلمني أن تكوني طبيبة؟". قالت الطيبة "يستغرق هذا وقتًا طويلًا ! اذا كنت تريد أن تكون طبيبًا اعمل باجتهاد هنا في المدرسة!".



سامر : لقد صنعها فارس يا استاذة راندا. لقد عمل بإجتهاد حقًا ليصنع ملصقًا.  
يبتسم فارس ويبدو فخورًا جدًا.

ريم : هل تحبون الذهب للتسوق معي كليكما ؟ أريد شراء هدية لامي.

مازن : هذا جميل يا ريم. هل هذا عيد ميلاد والدتك ؟

ريم : لا ليس هو. أنا فقط أريد شراء هدية لها لكونها أفضل أم.  
سوف استخدم النقود التي حصلت عليها في عيد ميلادي الشهر الماضي.

تاليا : أنها فكرة رائعة. تقول أمي دائمًا. "العطف مهم وهو شيء لطيف للقيام به." سوف تحب والدتك الهدية. ماذا تريد أن نشترى لها ؟

ريم : كنت أفكر في شراء بعض الكعك المميز لها أو الكيك ، لقد رأيت إعلان عن مخبز جديد في المدينة. فهم يصنعون كيك وكعك مميز جدًا، ويضعونهم في علبة بيضاء عليها بعض الورق الجميل.

مازن : سوف تكون هدية رائعة ياريم. أين المخبز ؟ هيا بنا نذهب إلى هناك الآن.

ريم : أنا غير متأكدة. يدعي ابتكارات الكيك. من المحتمل أن يكون لديهم موقع الكتروني.

تاليا : حسنًا. إذا نظرنا إلى موقعهم يمكن أن نجد عنوانهم والمزيد من المعلومات. مثل ما نوع الكيك الذي يصنعونه والأسعار.

مازن : عظيم. سوف أبحث في هاتفي واجد الموقع الالكتروني.

ريم : شكراً مازن.

### Lesson 5. The elephants and the mice

منذ سنوات عديدة عاش قطعيع من الأفيال في الهند. كانوا سعداء وكان قائدهم هي الملكة التي كانت أطيبة وأفضل الأفيال. أثناء النهار كان الجو حار جدًا. وكان الأفيال يحبون السباحة في البحيرة. بالقرب من البحيرة كان هناك قرية قديمة، لم يكن يعيش فيها أي شخص لكن كان بها المئات من الفئران. كان قائدهم الملك طيب. كان الأفيال والفئران يعيشون معًا بشكل جيد. لكن يوم ما قاموا الأفيال بتغيير طريقهم للبحيرة مما يعني أنهم ساروا بمحاذاة ممر قريب للفئران.

العديد من الأفيال لم يرو الفئران وساروا عليهم وقاموا بأذيائهم. بعد قليل قال الفئران لملك الفئران "هذا لا يمكن أن يستمر! هذا غير آمن لنا!"

قال ملك الفئران "لا تقلقوا سوف اتحدث إلي ملكة الأفيال" ثم ذهب ليتقابل معها:

تقابل ملك الفئران مع ملكة الأفيال وشرح لها المشكلة.

كانت الملكة في صدمة عندما سمعت ماذا يحدث ووافقت علي الذهاب من طريق مختلف.

قال ملك الفئران "شكراً للاستماع واحترام احتياجاتنا. أتمني يوما

ما أن نستطيع مساعدتكم إذا كنتم في موقع صعب."

أومأت الملكة رأسها بالموافقة لكنها فكرت نحن الأفيال اقوي

الحيوانات في الهند، لماذا نحتاج للمساعدة من فئران صغيرة

الحجم؟

بعد أسابيع قليلة كان بعض الصيادين يشاهدون الأفيال وتركوا

شباكهم. وفي اليوم التالي عندما ذهب الأفيال إلي البحيرة تم

أصطيادهم في الشباك. لم يستطيع الأفيال الحركة وقاموا بالزئير

قال الاستاذ كمال أن آدم علي صواب. فمن الصعب سماع الأصوات الهادئة. بعد ذلك، سألتنا أستاذ كمال عن الطرق التي نتواصل بها مع بعضنا البعض. كنا نظن أن هناك الكثير من الطرق. قلت أن الحديث هو وسيلة للتواصل. وقال آدم إن استخدام التعبيرات، مثل الابتسام، هي طريقة أخرى. وقال يونس إن كتابة الرسائل على هاتفه هي وسيلته المفضلة للتواصل. ثم أخبرنا السيد كمال عن طريقة ذكية جدًا للتواصل! هل يمكنك تخمين ما هو ؟

### Lesson 3. Amazing David

"Aguilar Amphaux" وأمفوكس هو شخص من اسبانيا. عندما كان في سن الثامنة عشر صنع ذراع اصطناعية من المكعبات البلاستيكية لأنه كان لديه ذراع واحدة. قام "David" بتصميمها بكوع متحرك ويد لتمسك الأشياء. كتب والد "David" كتاب مصور عن "David". يعتقد الجميع أن الكتاب شيء عظيم لأنه يساعد الأشخاص علي فهم الكثير من الاعاقات. صناعة الارزع والاقدام الاصطناعية شيء قد يكون صعبًا، لكن "David" صنع ذراعه بسعر رخيص باستخدام المكعبات البلاستيكية. يريد "David" بعد تخرجه من الجامعة أن يصنع أذرع واقدام اصطناعية بسعر رخيص لجميع الناس.

### Lesson 4.

استاذة راندا : حسنًا أريد من الجميع أن ينضموا لمجموعات ليصنعوا ملصقات عن الحيوانات التي تعيش في الغابة المطيرة الاستوائية. يجب أن يكون الملصق إعلان عن الغابات المطيرة. أريد أن تكون الملصقات ملونة بها معلومات شيقة. الآن يمكنكم العمل في المجموعات الخاصة بكم. أريد أن يعمل الجميع معًا ولا تنسوا أن العطف مهم في العمل.

فارس : تامر، جميلة، وائل. هل يمكنني العمل معكم ؟

تامر : لا للأسف. فنحن نعمل بالفعل مع مجدي.

مجدي احضر إلي هنا!

مجدي: أنا قادم !

فارس : شريف ، لمار. هل يمكنني العمل معكم ؟

شريف : لا فنحن نعمل مع فريدة.

بدأ فارس في الشعور بالحزن قليلًا وذهب ليتحدث مع

استاذة راندا.

فارس : لا يمكنني أن أجد مجموعة أعمل معها يا استاذة راندا.

فالجميع لديه مجموعة يعمل معها.

استاذة راندا : يا عزيزي! بالطبع يمكننا أن نجد لك شخص ما. دعنا

نذهب ونتحدث إلي أميرة. مع من تعملين يا أميرة في

مجموعتك ؟

أميرة : اعمل مع سامر ومريم، لكننا نحتاج شخص آخر.

استاذة راندا : رائع. ها هو فارس!

أميرة : أهلا فارس ! ماذا تحب أن تفعل في صنع الملصق ؟

فارس : أحب أن ارسم صورًا

أميرة : هذا رائع ! أنا جيدة في الكتابة، وسامر جيد في التصميم

ومريم رائعة في البحث عن المعلومات وإيجاد الصور. إذا

كنت تستطيع رسم صور فسنكون فريقًا جيدًا!

بعد قليل ...

الاستاذة راندا : هذه الملصقات رائعة. من قام بعمل هذه الصور

الجميلة؟

مرات عديدة مصدري أعلى الأصوات. سمع الفئران الصوت العالي وجاءوا راكضين. وبسرعة بدأ الفئران في قضم الشباك حتي استطاع الأفيال الخروج.

في اليوم التالي جاءت ملكة الأفيال لرؤية ملك الفئران وقالت "شكراً لكم جداً! لقد أنقذتوا بعض الأفيال من الصيادين! لقد أوضحت لنا أن كل أفراد المجتمع من الأكبر إلي الأصغر يمكنه أن يحدث فرقاً." شعر ملك الفئران أنه أكثر الفئران سعادة وفخر في القرية.

## Lesson 6. Dalia's personal profile

أهلاً بالجميع.

كيف هي أموركم؟

اسمي داليا. عمري أحد عشر سنة وأعيش في مدينة الإسكندرية. اذهب للمدرسة في مدرسة اليكس الحديثة. إنها مدرسة رائعة.

ولدي أصدقاء رائعين. أنا طويلة إلى حد ما وشعري طويل وبني اللون. أضع تقويم الاسنان. لدي أخ وأخت أكبر سنًا مني، لذلك يدعوني بالطفل الرضيع في العائلة!

أنا حريصة علي السير مع عائلتي واصدقائي. والريف القريب من منزلي رائع حقًا. أنا أحب التصوير. أحب التقاط الصور لكل الأشياء الجميلة التي أراها في الريف. وأحب أيضًا الاستماع إلي موسيقي بلدي والموسيقي من كل أنحاء العالم. بالإضافة إلي هذا أحب الرياضة جدًا. لعب الكرة الطائرة في النادي المحلي. ولدينا مباريات مرة في الشهر تقريبًا.

في العطلة الأسبوعية أحب الذهاب إلي المركز التجاري مع اصدقائي وعائلتي، ثم اذهب لمشاهدة التليفزيون مع جدتي في منزلها. نتحدث كثيرًا وهي تعيش بالقرب من منزلي لذلك من السهل علي الرجوع للمنزل.

افكر كثيرًا في المستقبل. اعتقد أنني أود أن أكون طبيبة اسنان مثل والدي. ماذا عنك؟ ماذا تبدو؟ ما هي هواياتك؟ أكتب واخبرني عن نفسك!

## Lesson 7. Hana saves the day

هنا صديقة جيدة تعيش في شارعى. في يوم ما بعد المدرسة اتصلت علي وقالت "مشايك الجديدة وصلت، هل تريدين المجئ ومساعدتي في تزيينها؟"

ركضت لمنزلها وأنا أشعر بالحماس. تتسلم هنا مشايه جديدة كل عام لأنها ترداد طولاً. عندما تصل المشايه الجديدة تقوم بتزيينها معاً. هنا تفضل اللون الأخضر لذا قمنا بطلائها باللون الأخضر وتم تزيينها بالنجوم والملصقات أنها تبدو رائعة. سألت هنا "ماذا يجب علينا أن نفعل الآن يا ريم؟" قلت لها "اعتقد أنه ينبغي علينا الذهاب للحديقة العامة." نحن عادة ما نذهب للتنشيه إلى الحديقة العامة بعد اليوم الدراسي. دنيا اخصائية العلاج الطبيعى التي تعالج هنا تقول أنه من المهم لها أن تنفّس هواء متجدد وتدريب قدميها لتصبح أقوى.

تقابلنا مع اصدقائنا في الحديقة العامة. قالوا اصدقائنا أن مشايه هنا الجديدة تبدو رائعة. رشا صديقتنا الجديدة سألت هنا لماذا تحتاجين إلى المشايه.

قالت هنا "حسناً"، عندما ولدت حدث شئ لعقلي والآن يعمل عقلي بشكل مختلف عن الآخرين. يسميه والدي عقلي المميز. تسمى هذه الحالة الشلل الدماغي.

سألت رشا "هل يمكنك القيام بكل شئ بالمشايه؟"

قالت هنا "لا فهناك كرسي خاص لتناول الوجبات في المنزل وللخروج في السيارة وهناك كرسي آخر مميز ومريح جدًا. ثم

سرنا أكثر قليلاً مع اصدقائنا. كانت نهى تسير في الخلف مع نادين صديقتنا. فجأة جاءت سيدة تركض في اتجاهنا وهي تبكي وقالت

"لا أستطيع أن أجد طفلي الصغير! لقد استدرت لاحضر له وجبة خفيفة من حقيبي، والآن لا أراه!"

سألته رشا: "كم عمر طفلك الصغير؟" ردت السيدة قائلة "عام واحد فقط. هو لا يستطيع المشي، هو يحبو علي الأرض."

لذا قمنا جميعاً بالبحث في الحشائش ومطعم الوجبات الخفيفة لكننا لم نراه، ثم لاحظت أن هناك مجموعة من الأشجار خلف المكان التي كانت تجلس فيه السيدة، فقلت لهم "دعونا ننظر هناك! ولكن أين هي هنا؟" لم يعرف أحد. قمنا جميعاً بالركض إلي الأشجار خائفين بشدة لأن المكان كان قريب لطريق السيارات. صرخت السيدة قائلة "آدم" وتوقفت عن البكاء.

كان آدم هناك يدفع نفسه لأعلي علي مشايه هنا، وكانت هنا تتحدث إليه بهدوء. كانت أمه شاكرة جدًا أن هنا وجدته. ارتحنا جميعاً وشعرنا بالسعادة وتناولنا ايس كريم لنتحفل!

## What is Adam's disability?

الوقت هو الخميس بعد الظهر، كان هذا أفضل يوم في الأسبوع لآدم ذهب آدم إلي نادي كرة السلة بعد اليوم الدراسي يوم الخميس. كان اليوم مميزاً. كانت والدته تنتظره عند مدخل المدرسة. قالت والدته "لقد احضرت لك بعض الماء ووجبة خفيفة يا آدم. يجب أن تتناول شئ قبل اللعب." رد آدم قائلاً "شكراً أمي، لقد نسيت تناول الطعام" قالت الأم مبتسمة "ذلك لأنك متحمس جدًا. هيا يا آدم دعنا نركب السيارة."

بعد خمس عشر دقيقة وصلوا إلي المركز الرياضي. رأى آدم صديقه حازم ينتظره عند المدخل. قال حازم "أهلاً آدم هل انت متحمس للمباراة؟" رد آدم "أهلاً حازم، نعم! ستكون أكثر مباراة مشوقة علي الإطلاق."

انتظر آدم والدته حتي تخرج له الكرسي المتحرك من السيارة. قال آدم "أنظري يا أمي. استاذ عادل اخصائي العلاج الطبيعى المعالج لي هناك. لقد حضر لمشاهدة المباراة. دعينا نلقي التحية."

بدأ آدم لعب كرة السلة بالكرسي المتحرك منذ ستة شهور مضت وهذه كانت أول مباراة له وهو كابتن الفريق. بدأت المباراة بشكل جيد وكان فريق آدم محققاً تقدماً حتي آخر خمسة دقائق عندما سجل الفريق الآخر نقطتين. كان هذا أمر خطير. لقد تبقى ثلاثة دقائق علي نهاية المباراة. ثم دقيقتين فجأة حصل ماجد علي الكرة وقذفها لحازم وبسرعة احتازم حازم لاعبين وقذف الكرة لآدم. كان متبقي ستون ثانية. أمسك آدم بالكرة وأوقف كرسيه المتحرك ثم قذف الكرة عاليًا في الهواء لتسقط في منتصف شبكة كرة السلة! هتف الجميع بصوت عالي!

فاز فريق آدم بالمباراة! يا له من يوم عظيم!

## A wonderful surprise

### The Beginning :

كانت نهاية اليوم الدراسي، وقام أسر بوضع أفلام الحبر وأفلام الرصاص في مكانها بعناية، نظر من نافذة الفصل ليرى والدته، لكنه لم يتمكن من رؤيتها. أخذت معلمته السيدة إيمان الأطفال إلى الخارج، ثم رأى أسر جدته تنتظر عند بوابة المدرسة. ابتسم ولوّح بيده لها. أحب أسر أن تصحبه جدته للمنزل واحتضنها.

قال أسر: «يا لها من مفاجأة جميلة! لم أكن أعلم أنك ستأتي اليوم». ابتسمت الجدة قائلة: «والدتك مشغولة، لذا فانا هنا اليوم. والآن أين أحتك؟» رأوا مبار تخرج من فصلها الدراسي، وكانت مع صديقاتها، وكانت تحمل كتاباً. وكانت تبدو سعيدة جدًا. جاءت معلمة ميار، المعلمة عزة، للتحديث مع الجدة.

قالت المعلمة عزة: «مبار لديها كتاب جديد. فيه كلمات يمكنك أن تقرأها لها. وفيه أيضًا كلمات بطريقة برايل تستطيع أن تقرأها بنفسها».



## The End :

استمتع أسر وشادي في الحديقة. وعندما شعروا بالتعب، جلسوا بالقرب من بعض الشجيرات الكثيفة. شربوا بعض الماء وأكلوا بعض الفاكهة.

كانوا يجلسون بهدوء عندما سمعوا الناس يتحدثون.

قال شادي : "يبدو هذا مثل صوت والدك."

نظر أسر حوله. كان شادي على حق. بدا الأمر وكأنهم كانوا قريبين - ولكن أين هم ؟

تجول أسر وشادي بين الشجيرات. وعلى الجانب الآخر كان هناك مجموعة من الناس يعملون. وكانا والدا أسر هناك، يحفران. ركض أسر إلى والديه. وعندما رآه والديه، كان متفاجئين. "أسر ! ماذا تفعل هنا ؟" سأل والده.

أجاب أسر : "لقد دعاني شادي ووالده إلى الحديقة وقد وافقت جدتي."

"نظر أسر إلى الأسفل ورأى حذاء والده الموحل المغطاة بالطين. سأل أسر : "ولكن ماذا فعلوا هنا ؟"

نظر والدا أسر إلى بعضهما البعض وضحكا. وضع والده المجرفة جانبًا. عرض الوالدين لأسر وشادي لوحة معلومات كبيرة عليها مخطط. أظهر المخطط الكثير من معدات اللعب الجديدة والمثيرة.

قالت سلمى : "نحن نبني ملعبًا بحديقة حسية. إنها مخصصة لجميع الأطفال في الحي ليستمتعوا."

وصل والد شادي وقال : "رائع ! سيكون هذا مذهلًا."

"ما هي الحديقة الحسية ؟" سأل شادي.

قال والد أسر : "الحديقة الحسية هي المكان الذي يمكنك من خلاله سماع ورؤية ولمس جميع أنواع الأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام." "لم تتمكن ميار والعديد من الأطفال الآخرين من استخدام بعض المعدات الموجودة في الملعب القديم، لذلك، نحن نعمل مع هؤلاء البنائين لتوفير مساحة يمكن للجميع الاستمتاع بها، هناك نافورة، وستكون هناك أجراس رياح ستكون هناك مسارات واسعة، حتى يكون من السهل على الأشخاص الذين يستخدمون الكراسي المتحركة الاستمتاع بالحديقة.

قالت والدة أسر : "نحن نزرع الزهور أيضًا ستكون رائحتهم رائعة." "هذا رائع. هل هذا هو سبب انشغالكم ؟" قال أسر.

"نعم، هو كذلك ! لم نخبرك عنه لأنها مفاجأة !" قال والده.

"أود أن أفعل شيئًا للمساعدة أيضًا !" قال أسر.

"عظيم !" قالت والدته. «يقوم عمال البناء بوضع المعدات الكبيرة الأسبوع القادم، ولكن يمكنك مساعدتنا في زراعة الزهور».

قال والده : «يمكنك تعليق أجراس الرياح أيضًا».

بدأ أسر وشادي بالمساعدة. لقد كان عملاً شاقًا، لكن الأولاد استمتعوا. «شكرا لكم على المساعدة !» قالت والدة أسر. «عندما يفتح هذا الأسبوع المقبل، يمكنكم الحضور واصطحب الجميع في جولة حول الحديقة».

في عطلة الأسبوع التالي، قالت الأم : «ميار، لدينا مفاجأة !» سألت ميار : «ما هي ؟»

قال والد ميار : «لا يمكننا إخبارك. إنه سر. فلنذهب جميعًا إلى الحديقة» استمتع أسر باصطحاب ميار في جولة حول الحديقة الحسية.

«أنا أحب المكان هنا ! النافورة هي الشيء المفضل لدى !» قالت ميار. قالت والدتهما : «شكرا لك على مساعدتنا يا أسر، ولا تقلق، فنحن لم ننس حفلتك الموسيقية !»

قالت الجدة : «شكرا لك ! يمكننا أن نقرأ معا هذا المساء».

«هل سنذهب إلى منزلك اليوم يا جدتي ؟» سألت ميار.

«نعم، سنذهب. والدتك والدك مشغولان. هل يجب أن نصنع الكعك ؟» «نعم من فضلك !» قال أسر وميار.

بقي الأطفال في منزل الجدة حتى المساء. وصل والداهم بعد العشاء. قالت والدتهم : «شكرا على اصطحاب الأطفال للمنزل يا أمي».

ردت الجدة : «العفو يا سلمى ! أحب وجودهم هنا».

«هل قضيتم وقتًا ممتعًا مع جدتك اليوم ؟» سألت أمهم.

قالت ميار : «نعم بالطبع ! وانظري إلى كتابي الجديد من المدرسة !»

قال والدهما : «إنه كتاب رائع. فلنقرأه عندما نعود إلى المنزل».

كانت والدتهم وأبيهم سعداء برؤية كتاب ميار الجديد. عندما كانت ميار طفلة، تعلم والداها طريقة برايل، لقد ساعدوها على القراءة.

والآن، يحبون القراءة مع ابنتهم في المساء.

ركب جميع أفراد الأسرة السيارة للعودة إلى المنزل، وعندما ذهب أسر لوضع الحقائب المدرسية في صندوق السيارة المفتوح، لاحظ شيئًا غريبًا، لقد رأى حذاء والدته وأبيه هناك، وكانا مغطين بالطين.

«أخذتهم مغطاة بالطين حقًا. هل ذهب أمي وأبي إلى المزرعة ؟» فكر أسر هكذا. ثم ركب أسر السيارة وذهبوا جميعًا إلى المنزل.

## The Middle :

في صباح اليوم التالي، أثناء تناول الإفطار، قالت والدة الأطفال :

«سوف تأخذكم جدتكم إلى المدرسة مرة أخرى اليوم».

«هل ستعودين إلى المنزل متأخرة يا أمي ؟» سأل أسر.

«نعم، أنا مشغولة جدًا هذا الأسبوع. سأتي لأصطحبكم للمنزل من منزل الجدة في الساعة السابعة».

قال أسر : «حسنًا».

«اليوم نادي الموسيقى، فلا تنسى الجيتار يا أسر. ميار لديك حصص خريف في وقت الغداء، فتذكرى المريلة الخاصة بك».

P.176

«هل يمكننا الاستماع إلى كتاب صوتي يا أمي ؟» سألت ميار.

«نعم، بالطبع»، قالت والدتها.

بينما تختار ميار ووالدتها كتابًا صوتيًا، كان أسر ينظر من النافذة. كان يفكر في حفلة المدرسة الأسبوع المقبل، كان يأمل أن يتذكرها والديه، لقد أرادهم حقًا أن يأثروا ويشاهدوه. أراد أسر أن يسأل والدته عن الحفل لكنها كانت تبدو متعبة. فقرر أن يسألها فيما بعد.

في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، كان الوالدان مشغولين مرة أخرى، خططت سلمى لأخذ الأطفال إلى منزل الجدة. لقد كان يومًا جميلًا، لذلك قرر أسر أن يأخذ معه كرة القدم.

ذهب إلى الجراج للحصول على كرة القدم. خارج الجراج رأى مجرفة والده. كانت مغطاة بالطين. نظر أسر حول الفناء. لم يكن هناك شيء مختلف، ولم تكن هناك أشجار أو نباتات جديدة، لماذا كانت المجرفة مغطاة بالطين جدًا ؟ «هذا غريب» فكر أسر كذلك.

كان أسر وميار يذهبان إلى منزل جدتهما كل يوم في ذلك الأسبوع. كان أسر قلقًا بشأن الحفل. لقد أراد حقًا أن يذهبا والديه إلى الحفلة الموسيقية. أرادهم أن يسمعوها وهو يغني ويعزف على الجيتار. هل تذكروا ذلك ؟ لقد كانوا مشغولين للغاية. لقد تدرب على أغنيته كثيرًا لأنه أراد أن يسير الحفل على ما يرام.

وفي وقت لاحق، كان أسر يلعب في ساحة منزل جدته بينما كانت ميار تستمع إلى كتاب صوتي. جاء صديق أسر، شادي.

قال شادي : «مرحبًا أسر. لم أكن أعلم أنك تعيش هنا».

قال أسر : «إنه منزل جدتي».

سأل شادي : «هل تريد أن تأتي إلى الحديقة معي أنا ووالدي ؟» قال أسر : «نعم، ولكن على أن أسأل جدتي».

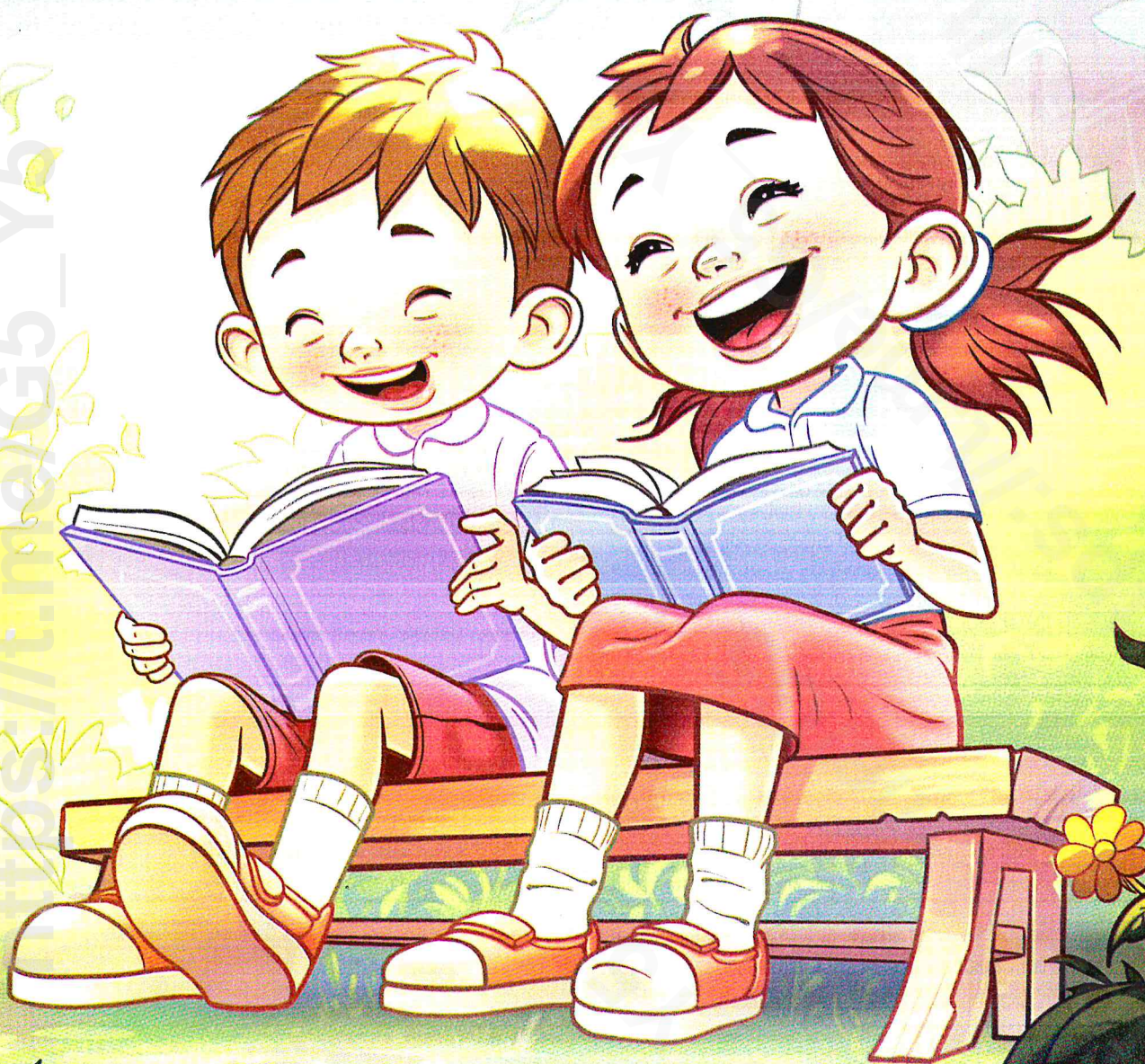
دخل أسر إلى الداخل وقال لجدته : «جدتي، هل يمكنني الذهاب إلى الحديقة مع شادي ووالده، من فضلك ؟»

أجابت الجدة : «نعم بالطبع. خذ زجاجة الماء الخاصة بك !»



# El Moasser

## Homework Notebook





# El-Moasser Homework Notebook

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي

## Part One

### Monthly Assessments

#### 1. October Test

#### 2. November Test

**PART 1** Monthly Assessments  
**1** October Test

1. Listen and answer the questions.

- Who is Anish Kapoor?
- Where was Anish Kapoor born?
- Why did he move to London?
- Where can people see his art?

2. Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

guitar - concert - problem - award - find

Interviewer: Wow! Mazen! The concert was amazing! You're so talented.  
Mazen: Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm always tired after a [1].

Interviewer: I'm not surprised. You played the [2] and sang for over an hour.  
Mazen: It went very quickly. But no one knew about the problem I had before the concert.

Interviewer: A [3]. What was that?  
Mazen: I couldn't find my guitar! I was practicing in a different room this morning, and I put my guitar somewhere, and later I forgot where I put it.

Interviewer: Where did you [4] it?  
Mazen: My friend found it behind the piano.

3. Read the following text and answer the questions.

Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or spheres. Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern. This makes them look like bubbles which are floating! Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about "a".  
a. Material    b. Museum    c. Sculpture    d. Subject

**PART 2** Dictation on Lessons  
**1** Write & Practice

Write the meaning → Complete the sentences

**Lessons 1 & 2**

- He is untidy. His room is \_\_\_\_\_.
- She designed a \_\_\_\_\_ poster for the event.
- The kids loved the \_\_\_\_\_ in the cartoon.
- We can use \_\_\_\_\_ or stone to make sculptures.

**Lessons 3 & 4**

- A \_\_\_\_\_ is a liquid ball full of air.
- Stainless steel is a very \_\_\_\_\_ metal.
- When you look into the mirror, it \_\_\_\_\_ your image.
- The fireworks made a big \_\_\_\_\_ in the sky.

**Lessons 5, 6 & 7**

- She played the \_\_\_\_\_ beautifully at the concert.
- She has a strong voice and she is a key member for the \_\_\_\_\_.
- The chef wears \_\_\_\_\_ while cooking.
- She wanted to \_\_\_\_\_ the playlist for the party.
- She decided to \_\_\_\_\_ the rooms with balloons and streamers.
- People wear \_\_\_\_\_, which are special clothes for festivals.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is my favorite bird.
- A \_\_\_\_\_ is a person whose job is playing music.

## Part Two

### Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدات





1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. Who is Anish Kapoor ?

2. Where was Anish Kapoor born ?

3. Why did he move to London ?

4. Where can people see his art ?

2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

guitar – concert – problem – award – find

**Interviewer** : Wow Mazen! The concert was amazing! You're so talented.

**Mazen** : Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm always tired after a [1] .....

**Interviewer** : I'm not surprised. You played the [2] ..... and sang for over an hour.

**Mazen** : It went very quickly. But no one knew about the problem I had before the concert.

**Interviewer** : A [3] .....! What was that ?

**Mazen** : I couldn't find my guitar! I was practicing in a different room this morning, and I put my guitar somewhere, and later I forgot where I put it.

**Interviewer** : Where did you [4] ..... it ?

**Mazen** : My friend found it behind the piano.

(Luxor 2024)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Tall Tree and the Eye is a **famous** sculpture by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or spheres.

Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern. This makes them look like bubbles which are floating !

Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about "a .....".

a. Material

b. Museum

c. Sculpture

d. Subject



2. The underlined word "famous" means .....

- a. well-known      b. terrible      c. different      d. dark

**B. Answer the following questions.**

3. Why did the artist use stainless steel ?

4. How do you know that Kapoor was a great artist ?

**4 The Reader**

**A. Read and write YES or NO.**

1. Children had a good time with grandma. [.....]  
2. Shady practiced his song a lot for the concert. [.....]

**B. Read and answer the questions.**

1. Where was grandma waiting Asser ?

2. Who was worried about the concert ?

**5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. He can help you if you ..... him.  
a. asking      b. to ask      c. asked      d. ask
2. I will mop ..... the water.  
a. out      b. up      c. on      d. away
3. If you want to get up early ..... early.  
a. to sleep      b. sleep      c. sleeps      d. sleeping
4. When I finished my project, I ..... it to my teacher.  
a. giving      b. give      c. gave      d. gives

**6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. away - the - she - When - put - did - dishes ?

2. paint - vase - He - the - to - used - decorate.

**7 Write a paragraph of SEVENTY [70] words using the following guiding elements.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**A pet**

Guiding elements:

- food      • sleep      • vet      • vaccine

### 1 Listen and answer the questions.

1. How old is Sherif ?

.....

2. Why does he use a wheelchair ?

.....

3. What subject is he good at ?

.....

4. What sport does he play ?

.....

(Giza – English Inspection 2025)

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

racket – rocket – club – animations – nervous

I joined a new club at school this term. We are learning to use computers to make [1]..... It's great fun ! At the moment, I'm making a story with moving pictures about somebody who makes a [2]..... and goes to the moon. I also go to a music [3]..... every week. I play the violin and I'll be in a concert next week – I'm a bit [4].....

### 3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Schools around the world want to do the same thing to give children a good education. In some countries, children start elementary school at seven years old. In other countries, the children are younger. In other countries in Africa, for example Kenya, some people have a nomadic culture, where they move from place to place. This means their teachers have to be flexible with the timetable. The teacher chooses subjects which are the most important at different times.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about "Different.....".

a. countries      b. schools      c. children      d. timetables

2. The opposite of the underlined word "start" is.....

a. move      b. find      c. hang      d. finish

#### B. Answer the following questions.

3. What's the importance of schools for children ?

.....

4. How is the school timetable in nomadic areas ?

.....

(Cairo - Helwan 2024)



#### • 4 The Reader

##### A. Read and write YES or NO.

1. Grandma went to Mayar's house every day. [.....]
2. Asser was worried about the concert. [.....]

##### B. Read and answer the questions.

1. What instrument does Asser play?  
.....

2. What was Asser doing in Grandma's yard?  
.....

#### • 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. He ..... that he had a stomachache.  
a. says                      b. tell                      c. tells                      d. said
2. My friend said that he ..... meet me at 7:00 at the park.  
a. would                      b. will                      c. can                      d. are
3. He ..... excited when he visits his favorite places.  
a. is always                      b. never is                      c. often is                      d. are usually
4. She said that the bus ..... there.  
a. were                      b. is                      c. will be                      d. was

#### • 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. education – important – School trips – very – for – are.  
.....

2. the – nomadic – in – How – timetables – are – schools?  
.....

#### • 7 Write an email of SEVENTY [70] words about green roofs to your friend Anas. Your friend's email address is anas@gmail.com. Your name is Malek and your email address is malek@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements: • gardens • environment • nature • design

New message x

Secure | https:

From : \_\_\_\_\_

To : \_\_\_\_\_

Subject : \_\_\_\_\_

.....

.....

.....

.....



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

## I Write & Practice

### Write the meaning

### Complete the sentences

#### Lessons 1 & 2

..... مبدع / إبداعي  
..... الرسوم المتحركة الحاسوبية  
..... طين خزفي / صلصال  
..... غير مريح  
..... فوضوي / غير مرتب  
..... مهارات

1. He is untidy, his room is .....
2. She designed a ..... poster for the event.
3. The kids loved the ..... in the cartoon.
4. We can use ..... or stone to make sculptures.

#### Lessons 3 & 4

..... لامع  
..... يعكس  
..... فرقعة / انفجار  
..... فقاعات  
..... تمطر  
..... مرح

1. A ..... is a liquid ball full of air.
2. Stainless steel is a very ..... metal.
3. When you look into the mirror, it ..... your image.
4. The fireworks made a big ..... in the sky.

#### Lessons 5, 6 & 7

..... كورال [فريق من المنشدين]  
..... مريلة  
..... يُعد / يُعدل  
..... جائزة  
..... تشيلو [كمنجة كبيرة]  
..... خشبة المسرح  
..... طائر الهدهد  
..... أزياء خاصة  
..... موسيقار  
..... جمهور  
..... موهوب  
..... يزين

1. She played the ..... beautifully at the concert.
2. She has a strong voice and she is a key member for the .....
3. The chef wears ..... while cooking.
4. She wanted to ..... the playlist for the party.
5. She decided to ..... the rooms with balloons and streamers.
6. People wear ....., which are special clothes for festivals.
7. .... is my favorite bird.
8. A ..... is a person whose job is playing music.





يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة  
إنشائية عن طريق اتباع  
الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم  
من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

Step 1 Vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Paragraphs
<p>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية</p> <p>► Write the meaning :</p> <p>طين خرف / صلصال ..... تمثال منحوت ..... معرض / عرض ..... يظهر ..... مبدع / إبداع ..... تصميم نماذج .....</p>	<p>متبقاً الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية</p> <p>► Reorder the words :</p> <p>1. can - clay - sculptures - <u>We</u> - use - to make.</p> <p>2. works - exhibitions - <u>Creative</u> - appear - the art - in.</p> <p>3. could - plastic - <u>We</u> - use - junk - in - modeling.</p> <p>4. jewelry - used to - beads - are - <u>Colored</u> - make.</p>	<p>متبقاً الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية</p> <p>► Write a paragraph about : "Creative Project"</p>
<p>مادة الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ ..... أجسام كروية ..... فقاعات ..... يطفو ..... مشهور .....</p>	<p>5. is - steel - stainless - <u>It</u> - made of - spheres.</p> <p>6. look - bubbles - <u>They</u> - like - are - floating - which.</p> <p>7. is - famous - <u>It</u> - a - sculpture.</p>	<p>"Tall Tree and the Eye"</p>
<p>مربلة ..... يزين / يرخف ..... كتلة صلصال ..... مميز / خاص ..... ملابس .....</p>	<p>8. put - over - clothes - <u>We</u> - an apron - our.</p> <p>9. used - paint - bowl - <u>I</u> - special - to decorate - my.</p> <p>10. started - project - <u>We</u> - our - a lump - of clay - with.</p>	<p>"Your pottery project"</p>

## Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

## I

## Write &amp; Practice

## Write the meaning

## Complete the sentences

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

.....	شفرة
.....	آلة / جهاز
.....	مُجفف الشعر
.....	شقة
.....	محمصة خبز كهربية
.....	حليب مخفوق
.....	لِقَاح
.....	مُحرك / موتور
.....	رياضي
.....	لعبة الشطرنج
.....	خلاط
.....	رسوم متحركة

- ..... is a drink that is often chocolate or vanilla.
- When the ..... turns, it chops the food.
- The refrigerator is the best kitchen .....
- She used the ..... to dry her hair quickly.
- I use a ..... for making milkshake.
- We play ..... at the school chess club.
- People won't get sick if they have a .....
- ..... is a part of a machine that makes something move.

## Lessons 3 &amp; 4

.....	كهرباء
.....	مُروع / مصدوم
.....	انقطاع التيار الكهربائي
.....	وصلة سلك [كابل]
.....	الأعمال المنزلية
.....	سوء

- We need a/an ..... to connect the TV.
- Solar panels generate ..... from sunlight.
- The boy was ..... to hear the sound of thunder.
- Because of the ....., we had no internet or power for TV.

## Lessons 5, 6 &amp; 7

.....	عناية - اهتمام
.....	قالب من الطوب
.....	طوق [حول الرقبة]
.....	طقولة
.....	مخالب
.....	يرش

- ..... is a small block for building.
- The lion's ..... are very sharp.
- The cat has a ..... with its name and address on it.
- Cats need a lot of ..... to feel safe.





يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة  
إنشائية عن طريق اتباع  
الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم  
من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

	<b>Step 1</b> Vocabulary اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	<b>Step 2</b> Sentences متبقا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	<b>Step 3</b> Paragraphs متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
Your bedroom	<b>Write the meaning :</b> ..... غرفة ..... مريح ..... أجهزة الحاسوب الشخصي ..... يشارك ..... واجب منزلي	<b>Reorder the words :</b> 1. is - and - <u>My room</u> - light - comfortable. ..... 2. can - our - in - <u>We</u> - do - homework - our bedroom. ..... 3. share - bedroom - <u>I</u> - my - my brother - with. ..... 4. have - desk - <u>We</u> - a long - our - for - PCS. .....	<b>Write a paragraph about :</b> <b>"Your bedroom"</b> ..... ..... ..... .....
Amazing appliances	..... مُخَرَك - موتور ..... شَفَرَة ..... لِقَاح ..... خَلاط ..... بَسْخَن	5. turns - blades - <u>The motor</u> - the. ..... 6. were - to - <u>Blenders</u> - used - a vaccine - make. ..... 7. blenders - <u>Some</u> - can - food - heat. .....	<b>"Amazing appliances"</b> ..... ..... ..... .....
Caring for your cat	..... عناية - اهتمام ..... يلاطف - يداعب ..... عمود خدش ..... قطة ..... يعطى	8. your - lots - <u>Give</u> - cat - attention - of. ..... 9. should - cat - your - <u>You</u> - stroke. ..... 10. needs - post - <u>A cat</u> - a scratch. .....	<b>Write an email about :</b> <b>"Caring for your cat"</b> ..... ..... ..... .....

## Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

## I

## Write &amp; Practice

## Write the meaning

## Complete the sentences

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

.....	أنيق / مرتب
.....	جدول مواعيد
.....	تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات
.....	مُنْتَقَل
.....	الطبيعة
.....	أسقف خضراء
.....	زى مدرسي موحد
.....	كافيتريا
.....	الرنّة [نوع من فصيلة الغزلان]
.....	زلجات
.....	بدوى
.....	مرن

1. .... clean and cool the air of the city.
2. She keeps her room ..... and tidy.
3. I checked the ..... to see when the next train would arrive.
4. .... is a subject where you study and use computers.
5. .... people don't live in one place.
6. .... are clothes that are the same for every student.
7. We had lunch in the ..... today.
8. The children were excited to see the ..... at the zoo.

## Lessons 3 &amp; 4

.....	نادى الطهى
.....	شغوف / متحمس
.....	يرمى / يصوب
.....	يوم مفتوح
.....	ممر طبيعى
.....	يشجع

1. To ..... means to persuade someone to do something by giving them support.
2. She learned to bake cookies at the .....
3. The music club members are very ..... about music.
4. They will ..... fireworks for the celebration.

## Lessons 5, 6 &amp; 7

.....	سام
.....	ينهار / يسقط
.....	كاتب
.....	رحلة طويلة
.....	شديد الانحدار
.....	ميدان / ساحة

1. The stairs were too ..... for her elderly grandmother.
2. The snake is famous for being .....
3. The roof began to ..... during the storm.
4. A ..... is a person who wrote about what happened in the past.





يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة  
إنشائية عن طريق اتباع  
الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم  
من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

<b>Step 1</b> <b>Vocabulary</b> اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	<b>Step 2</b> <b>Sentences</b> مبثقا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	<b>Step 3</b> <b>Paragraphs / Emails</b> مبثقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية أو بريد إلكتروني
<b>Write the meaning :</b> ..... بدوي ..... خيمة ..... جدول مواعيد ..... مرن ..... مدرسة بدوية	<b>Reorder the words :</b> 1. people - live - <u>Nomadic</u> - don't - place - in one. 2. have - lessons - tents - <u>Students</u> - their - in. 3. school - with - <u>Nomadic</u> - travels - families - the. 4. is - school - at - <u>The timetable</u> - flexible - the nomadic.	<b>Write paragraphs about :</b> <b>"Nomadic school"</b> ..... ..... ..... .....
..... أسقف خضراء ..... ينظف ..... مبني ..... الطبيعة ..... تجلب	5. clean - the city - <u>Green</u> - the air - roofs - in. 6. roofs - gardens - <u>Green</u> - are - a building - the top of - on. 7. bring - the city - <u>Green</u> - into - roofs - nature.	<b>"Green roofs"</b> ..... ..... ..... .....
..... نادي التربية الفنية ..... دراما ..... يعني ..... يعرف ..... آلة موسيقية	8. makes - relaxed - <u>An art club</u> - you. 9. enjoy - drama - <u>We</u> - going to - club - a. 10. sing - and - <u>We</u> - songs - instruments - play.	<b>Write an email about :</b> <b>"School clubs"</b> ..... ..... ..... .....
Nomadic school	Green roofs	School clubs

# Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I

## Write & Practice

Write the meaning

Complete the sentences

### Lessons 1 & 2

..... سماعة الأذن  
..... تقويم الأسنان  
..... يتواصل  
..... شعر مجعد  
..... لغة الأصابع  
..... كرسي متحرك

1. She has ..... and her brother has straight hair.
2. He has a ..... because he has problems hearing.
3. She wears ..... to help her teeth get straight.
4. They ..... through sign language.

### Lessons 3 & 4

..... ذراع اصطناعية  
..... مخبز  
..... إعلان  
..... مكعبات / قوالب  
..... رحلة بالحافلة  
..... قصة مضحكة / هزلية

1. I'm reading ..... It makes me laugh.
2. He lost his arm in an accident and now he uses a .....
3. She buys fresh bread from the .....
4. She saw many ..... in the magazine.

### Lessons 5, 6 & 7

..... هوايات  
..... أخصائي العلاج الطبيعي  
..... مشاية  
..... مرتاح البال  
..... قطيع [الأفيال]  
..... يزحف / يحبو  
..... يحترم  
..... قائد  
..... صياد  
..... ملف تعريفى  
..... مدخل  
..... قوى

1. Elephants live in a .....
2. Reading and writing are my favorite .....
3. .... is a person who helps people with disabilities.
4. .... is something that people use to help them walk.
5. The storm was .....
6. The students should ..... their teacher.
7. A good ..... should listen to the opinions of others.
8. A ..... is a person who tries to catch or kill wild animals.



## II

# Writing Practice



يقوم الطلاب بكتابة فقرة إنشائية عن طريق اتباع الخطوات الثلاثة التي تمكنهم من إتقان مهارة الكتابة.

Ways to communicate	<div> <div>Step 1</div> <div>Vocabulary</div> </div> <p>اختر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية</p>	<div> <div>Step 2</div> <div>Sentences</div> </div> <p>متبعا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية</p>	<div> <div>Step 3</div> <div>Paragraphs / Emails</div> </div> <p>متبعا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية أو بريد إلكتروني</p>
We are all different	<p>Write the meaning :</p> <p>رسائل نصية ..... تواصل ..... لغة الإشارة ..... مفيد ..... لغة الأصابع .....</p>	<p>Reorder the words :</p> <p>1. can - messages - <u>We</u> - send - text. .....</p> <p>2. can - many - <u>We</u> - use - ways - communicate - to. .....</p> <p>3. language - a useful - <u>Sign</u> - is - to communicate - way. .....</p> <p>4. spelling - a way - <u>Finger</u> - is - of - communicating. .....</p>	<p>Write paragraphs about :</p> <p>"Ways to communicate"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>
Your hobbies	<p>كرسي متحرك ..... مختلف ..... تقويم أسنان ..... سماعة أذن ..... يرتدي .....</p>	<p>5. uses - <u>He</u> - wheelchair - a. .....</p> <p>6. are - all - <u>We</u> - different. .....</p> <p>7. wears - <u>She</u> - braces. .....</p> <p>8. have - hearing - <u>They</u> - a - aid. .....</p>	<p>"We are all different"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>
	<p>9. love - mall - the - <u>I</u> - to - going. .....</p> <p>10. like - photos - <u>I</u> - taking. .....</p> <p>11. love - music - <u>I</u> - listening - to. .....</p>	<p>Write an email about :</p> <p>"Your hobbies"</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>	

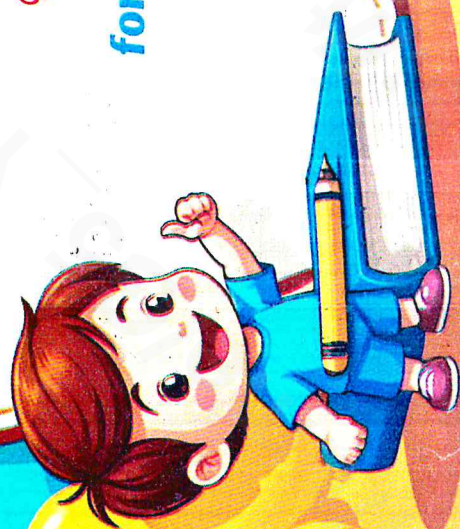


# Certificate of Achievement

Name: .....

Date: .....

for successfully finishing this book





يُصرف مجاناً مع الكتاب  
كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية



أدخل كودك الشخصي  
الموجود على ظهر الغلاف



**NOW** at all bookstores...  
English, Math, Science & ICT

الآن بالمكتبات...

المعاصر في...  
اللغة الإنجليزية  
Connect Plus من kg1  
إلى الصف السادس الابتدائي  
بتصريح وتحت إشراف  
وزارة التربية والتعليم



CONNECT  
Plus



6<sup>th</sup>  
Primary  
2026  
FIRST TERM



**AL TALABA BOOKSTORE**  
For printing, publication & distribution  
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt  
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91  
www.gpseducation.com

15014



[https://t.me/G5\\_Y5](https://t.me/G5_Y5)